



First Term

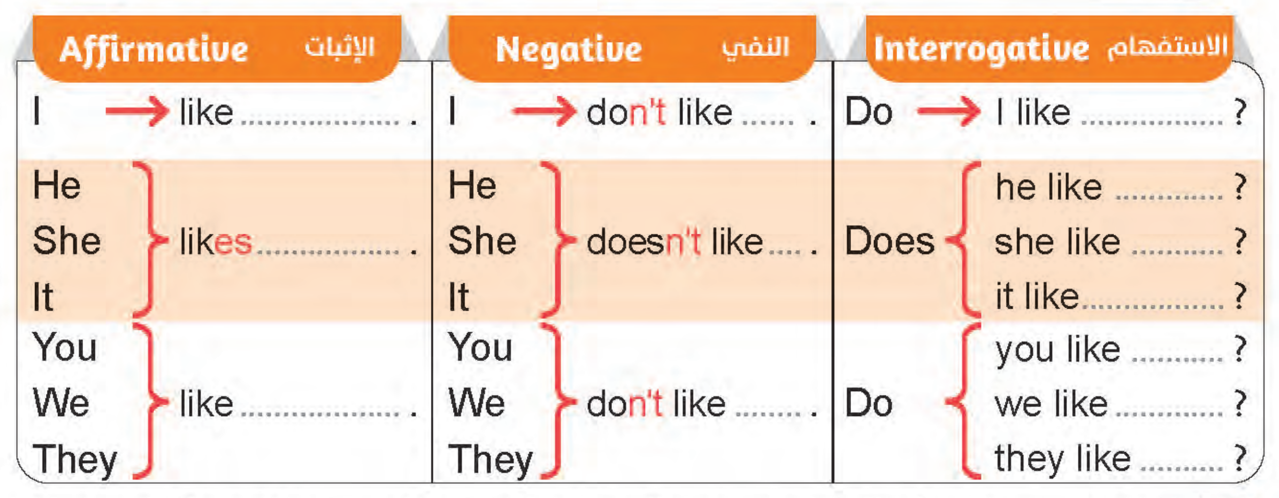


Revision on Primary (5)

"Connect (5) Grammar Revision"

مراجعة على أهم قواعد (Connect 5)

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط



Affirmative الإثبات		Negative النفي		Interrogative الاستفهام	
I	→ like	I	→ don't like	Do →	I like .... ?
He / She / It	likes................. .	He / She / It	doesn't like..... .	Does	he like .... ? / she like .... ? / it like................ ?
You / We / They	like	You / We / They	don't like	Do	you like .... ? / we like............. ? / they like .... ?

- تُستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لنعبر عن كم مرة نقوم بعمل شيء ما.

always	often	usually	sometimes	never

1 Choose the correct answer:

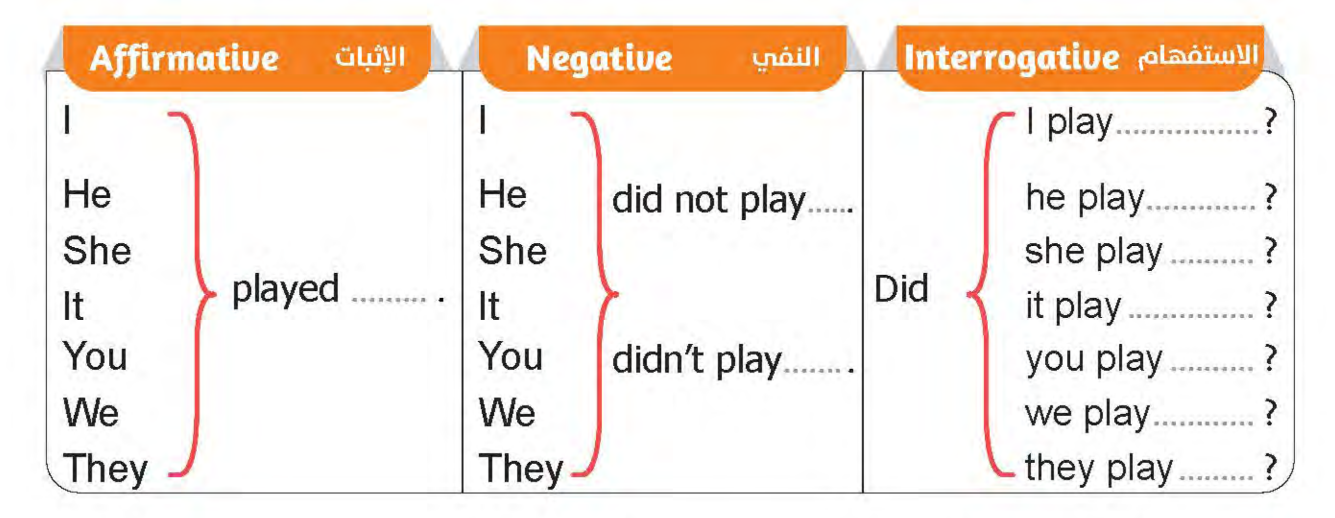
1. I (catch - catches - catching) the bus every morning.
2. My mother always (cooks - cooking - cook) delicious food.
3. Mrs Mona (work - works - working) at a language school.
4. What (does - do - doing) you usually do in the evening?
5. Nadia (go - goes - going) to school by car.
6. (Do - Does - Are) you like speaking English?
7. My sisters (do - does - doing) the homework at night.
8. We usually (eat - eating - eats) yogurt for breakfast.
9. Mom (has - have - is having) a sharp knife to cut the vegetables.
10. My boss (ask - asking - asks) me to do some jobs.

11. (Do - Does - Is) Ahlam like fish?
12. (Do - Does - Are) you like reading books?
13. How often (do - does - doing) you go to the club?
14. How often (do - does - doing) Yassin tidy his room?
15. Amgad (always has - has always - always have) a nice smile.
16. Hagar (is never - never is - are never) late for school.

Verb to be in the past

was	were
I - He - She - It - Singular (أي اسم مفرد)	You - We - They - Plural (أي اسم جمع)

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط



Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I / He / She / It / You / We / They — played	I / He / She / It / You / We / They — did not play...... / didn't play....... .	Did — I play...............? / he play............? / she play ....? / it play ....? / you play ....? / we play............? / they play ....?

يوجد كلمات دالة على زمن الماضي البسيط مثل:

yesterday	أمس	in the past	في الماضي
ago	منذ	last (week)	الأسبوع (الماضي)

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Yesterday, my cousin (comes - came - come) to visit us.
2. I was late because I (miss - missed - missing) the train.
3. My grandma (go - goes - went) to Alexandria two days ago.
4. They (eating - ate - eats) pizza at a restaurant in the square.
5. We (had - have - has) a great time and enjoyed a lot.
6. What did he (eats - eating - eat) for lunch?
7. Did she (go - goes - went) to Aswan last week?
8. How (does - did - done) you feel about the new theater?
9. It (start - starts - started) to rain an hour ago.
10. I (don't - didn't - doesn't) see you last week.
11. Where did she (go - goes - went) last weekend?
12. He didn't (came - coming - come) with us because he was tired.

3 Change into negative:

1. I came late yesterday.
   ▶ ....
2. They went to school yesterday.
   ▶ ....
3. I arrived on time.
   ▶ ....
4. We were happy in the garden.
   ▶ ....
5. She ate pasta an hour ago.
   ▶ ....

4 Make correct questions:

1. I went to the park yesterday.
   ▶ .... ?

2. They helped their mother last week.

▶ .... ?

3. We played football at the club.

▶ .... ?

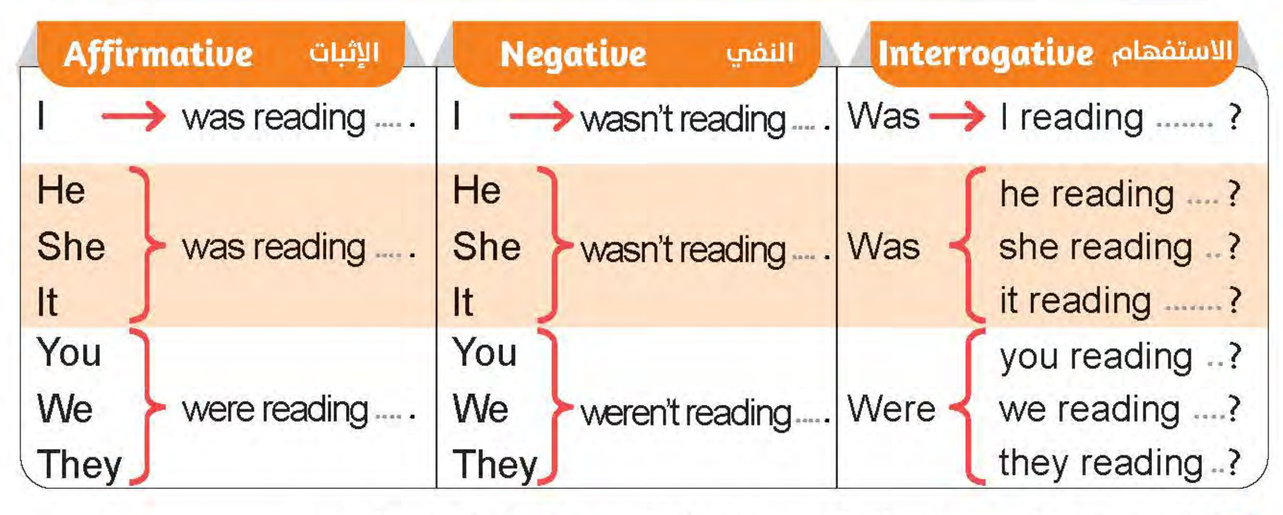
4. Yes, I was happy.

▶ .... ?

5. No, she wasn't at the zoo.

▶ .... ?

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر



Affirmative الإثبات		Negative النفي		Interrogative الاستفهام	
I	→ was reading	I	→ wasn't reading	Was →	I reading .... ?
He She It	was reading	He She It	wasn't reading	Was	he reading ..... ? she reading .. ? it reading .... ?
You We They	were reading	You We They	weren't reading	Were	you reading .. ? we reading .... ? they reading .. ?

○ يُعَبِّر عن حدث وقع في الماضي واستغرق حدوثه فترة من الوقت.

○ She was helping her mom on Friday morning.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. Ramy (is - was - were) fishing last week.
2. Was he (study - studies - studying) English with his dad?
3. My father was (work - works - working) all day yesterday.
4. (Was - Were - Is) he having breakfast at ten yesterday?
5. What (are - were - was) you doing at 8 pm yesterday?
6. (Was - Were - Am) you reading a story at five the day before?

7. We (was - were - are) having a great time at the garden.
8. The tiger (was - were - is) running at the forest.
9. Was she (help - helps - helping) her mother at the kitchen?
10. Were they (play - playing - played) tennis at five in the afternoon?
11. What were you (do - does - doing) yesterday?
12. (Does - Are - Was) he swimming all day?
13. I was (listen - listened - listening) to the radio when my mom entered my room.
14. Some geese (were - was - is) swimming in the pond.
15. My father (was - is - were) doing his work when the light went off.

6 Write the correct word from the box:

was - were

1. The duck .... swimming.
2. The cats .... running away.
3. .... the farmer growing vegetables?
4. They .... helping their mom.
5. My mom .... cooking in the kitchen.
6. I .... watching TV when the light went out.
7. We .... walking in a beautiful garden.
8. .... they watching a match or a film?
9. Manar .... taking a shower yesterday.
10. The students .... reading English at the class.
11. What .... they doing at the Nubian village?
12. Ahmed .... explaining what greenhouse gases are.

some بعض - any أي

- We can use (some – any) before countable or uncountable nouns.
- يمكن أن نستخدم (some – any) قبل الأسماء التي تعد أو قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد.
- We use (some) in affirmative sentences and (any) in questions and negative sentences.
- تُستخدم (some) في الجُمَل المُثْبَتة وسؤالَيْ العرض والطلب، بينما تُستخدم (any) في الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية.
- When we offer or ask for something politely, we use the word (some) not (any).
- تُستخدَم (some) بدلًا من (any) في الجملة الاستفهامية (السؤال) عند عرض شيء أو طلب شيء بأسلوب مهذب.

7 Choose the correct answer:

1. There (is - are - aren't) some milk in the glass.
2. There (is - isn't - aren't) any water in the bottle.
3. There (is - isn't - aren't) one carrot on the shelf.
4. Do you have (some - any - a) biscuits?
5. I would like (some - any - an) eggs.
6. Are there any (banana - bananas - a banana)?
7. There (is - are - aren't) some fruit and vegetables on the plate.
8. Is there (some - any - a) butter in the pan?
9. How about buying some (grapes - grape - a grape)?
10. There isn't (some - any - a) jam in the fridge.
11. She wants (a - an - some) onion.
12. Is there (a - an - any) pineapple on the table?
13. Do you like (some - any - a) sugar in your tea?
14. Can I have (some - any - a) juice, please?
15. Is there (a - any - an) jam in the fridge?

16. Could you give me (some - any - a) salt, please?
17. Are there (some - any - a) tomatoes in the market?
18. Is there any (eggs - dates - cheese) in the fridge?
19. (Am - Is - Are) there any sugar in the supermarket?
20. Please, can I have some (apples - apple - an apple)?

8 Complete the following sentences with (some – any):

1. There are .... oranges on the table.
2. Are there .... figs in the market?
3. Is there .... sugar in the cup?
4. There's .... cheese in the fridge.
5. Are there .... cups of coffee on the table?
6. He had .... sandwiches for dinner.
7. Can you give me .... water, please?
8. There's .... juice in the glass.
9. Do you have .... eggs?
10. Would you like .... orange juice?

to لكي - because لأن

- **We can answer the questions that begin with (why) by using (to) or (because).**
- يمكن الإجابة على السؤال البادئ بـ (why) باستخدام (to) أو (because).
- **Why did she go to a restaurant? ▶ To have a sandwich.**
- **Why did Dad come home early? ▶ Because he felt tired.**

Note that: لاحظ أن:

تُتبع (because) بجملة تامة بينما (to) تُتبع بمصدر الفعل، ومصدر الفعل هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافات، أي بدون إضافة (s – es – ing – ed ......).



9 Choose the correct answer:

1. I went to bed early (because - to - so) I was tired.
2. My brother bought new shorts (because - to - so) wear at the beach.
3. Why is she running? ▶ (So - To - Because) she's late.
4. I went to the library (to - because - so) borrow a book.
5. Why do you go to the club? ▶ (Because - To - So) play with my friends.
6. She bought a new suitcase (because pack - to pack - packs) her clothes.
7. I studied hard (to - because - so) get good marks.
8. Yassin went to the library (to - because - so) read books.
9. Why did May go to the kitchen? ▶ (It helps - To help - Because help) her mom.
10. I went to the hall (to get - getting - because get) my coat.
11. Amira bought sunglasses to (wear - wears - wearing) on sunny days.
12. Ehab went to the market (to - so - because) buy pasta.
13. My father bought a new phone (to - so - because) call his friends.
14. She looks like a princess (because - to - so) she is so beautiful.
15. Why is Adel sad? ▶ (To - Because - So) he got bad marks.

Verb to have عندي - لدي

Verb to have

has	have
He - She - It - Singular ▶▶▶ أي اسم مفرد	I - You - We - They - Plural ▶▶▶ أي اسم جمع

Remember تذكّر

- have → عند النفي → **don't have**
- has → عند النفي → **doesn't have**
- have → عند السؤال → **Do (you) have**
- has → عند السؤال → **Does (she) have**

10 Choose the correct answer:

1. I (am - has - have) a headache.
2. We (are - have - has) a cold.
3. Does Shady (has - had - have) a cough?
4. She doesn't (has - have - had) cuts on her arms.
5. My mother (has - have - is) a toothache.
6. He (is - do - has) an earache.
7. Do you (has - have - are) a stomachache?
8. Does he (had - have - has) a cough?
9. Ahmed (don't - doesn't - isn't) have a headache.
10. You (are - has - have) a cold. Stay at home, please.



Ability (القدرة (الاستطاعة))

can يستطيع	can't لا يستطيع

○ نعبر عن الاستطاعة في المضارع باستخدام (can - can't).

could كان يستطيع	couldn't لم يكن يستطيع

○ نعبر عن الاستطاعة في الماضي باستخدام (could - couldn't).

11 Choose the correct answer:

1. I (can - can't - couldn't) fly a kite. It's easy.
2. I wanted to see the bats, but I (can't - could - couldn't).
3. (Can - Could - Couldn't) you make pasta? ▶ No, I can't.
4. Penguins (can - can't - couldn't) swim very well. They like water.
5. (Can - Can't - Could) he get the full mark? ▶ Yes, he could.
6. Can you (come - came - comes) with us?



7. I (can - can't - couldn't) buy that expensive car. I have no money.

8. Could Taher (play - played - plays) the match yesterday?

9. What (can - could - can't) you do yesterday?

10. I (can - can't - am) speak French. It's so difficult.

The Imperative صيغة الأمر

- **Affirmative imperatives use the infinitive without (to):**
- عند الأمر، نضع الفعل في المصدر فى أول الجملة.

▶ **Open the door, please.** ▶ **Sit down, Ahmed.**

- **Negative imperatives use don't + infinitive without to:**
- عند النهي، نبدأ الجملة بـ (Don't) وبعدها الفعل في المصدر.

▶ **Don't eat in the library.** ▶ **Don't throw rubbish.**

12 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Write - Writes - Wrote) your answer in short sentences.

2. (Don't eat - Eat - Eats) fruit and vegetables to stay healthy.

3. (Doesn't - Don't - Do) waste your time.

4. (Listening - Listens - Listen) to your teacher carefully in the class.

5. Don't (shouts - shout - shouting) in class.

6. (Come - Comes - To come) to school early.

7. (Don't - Doesn't - Do) the housework with your mom.

8. We will go to the park tomorrow. (Comes - Coming - Come) early, please.

9. (Don't - Doesn't - Do) eat in the class.

10. Don't (opens - open - opened) your notebooks. Look at the board.

The Adverb (الظرف (الحال

- We make most adverbs by adding (ly) to the end of the adjective.
- عادة ما يتكون الظرف بإضافة (ly) للصفة.
- The words "hard - fast" can be used as adjectives and adverbs:
- كلمتي "hard - fast" يمكن أن يتم استخدامهما كصفات وظروف.
- The adverb of the adjective "good" is "well":
- الظرف من الصفة "good" هو "well".
- We use the adjective before a noun to describe it, but the adverb is used after a verb to describe it.
- الصفة تصف اسمًا وتأتي قبله، بينما الظرف يصف فعلاً ويأتي بعده.

13 Choose the correct answer:

1. The tortoise walks (slow - slowly - quick).
2. She can't run (slow - quick - quickly) in the street.
3. I'm a (fast - slowly - quickly) rider.
4. He was (nervous - quietly - nervously) yesterday.
5. She speaks (nice - happy - nicely).
6. The teacher is shouting (loud - angry - angrily).
7. He is a (careful - carefully - carelessly) driver.
8. Wael can speak English (good - well - bad).
9. I can ride my bike (fast - slow - quick).
10. The boy is speaking (polite - politely - loud).



Unit 1 Green cities

مدن خضراء (مدن صديقة للبيئة)

In this unit I will ....

- listen, read, write, and research about green spaces in towns.
- talk about how often we do things.
- listen and read about a project to make a city greener.
- say the sounds *th* and *s*.
- write an email about things I miss about Egypt.
- research and make an infographic about my area.



Lesson 1 We Work in the Community Garden

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





apartment block
مبنى سكني - عمارة



community garden
حديقة المجتمع - حديقة مجتمعية



harvest (v)
يحصد



plant (v)
يزرع



natural fertilizer
سماد طبيعي



roof
سطح



volunteers
متطوعون



neighborhood
حيّ سكني

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

chemicals	مواد كيميائية	**in the middle of the city**	في وسط المدينة
organic	عضويّ	**in the market**	في السوق
people's health	صحة الناس	**project**	مشروع
local area	منطقة محلية	**make new friends**	تُكوّن أصدقاء جدد

Foods أطعمة

fresh food	طعام طازج	**vegetables**	خضراوات
fruit tree	شجرة فاكهة	**peppers**	فلفل
lemons	ليمون	**onions**	بصل
dates	تمر - بلح	**lettuce**	خَسّ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
harvest	يحصد	harvested	want	يريد	wanted
plant	يزرع	planted	listen	يستمع	listened
work	يعمل	worked	use	يستخدم	used
help	يساعد	helped	like	يحب	liked
need	يحتاج	needed	live	يعيش	lived
clean	ينظف	cleaned	produce	يُنْتِج	produced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
am - is - are	يكون	was - were	grow	يزرع - ينمو	grew
do	يعمل - يفعل	did	eat	يأكل	ate
have	يملك - عنده	had	sell	يبيع	sold
read	يقرأ	read	come	يأتي	came
go	يذهب	went	mean	يعني	meant
can	يستطيع	could	meet	يقابل	met
make	يصنع - يُعِدّ	made	think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

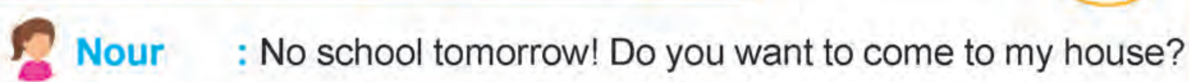
'Urban greening' is an important part of town planning in many countries. It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

يُعدّ "التخضير الحضري" جزءًا مهمًا من تخطيط المدن في العديد من الدول، وهو يعني إنشاء مساحاتٍ من النباتات والأشجار في المدن. هذه المساحات يمكن أن تكون منتزهات صغيرة بين البنايات أو حدائق على أسطح منازل الناس.



Read and learn





Where does Maryam go on Fridays?

Nour : No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

Maryam : Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.

Nour : The community garden? What's that?

Maryam : It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

Nour : That's interesting. What things do you grow?

Maryam : Well, we usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. This year we have lemons and dates.

Nour : And you grow all this food in the middle of the city. Wow!

Maryam : Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and it's organic too, which means we only use natural fertilizer, we never use chemicals.

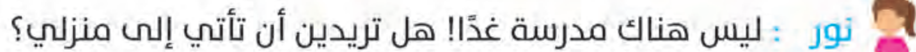
Nour : Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

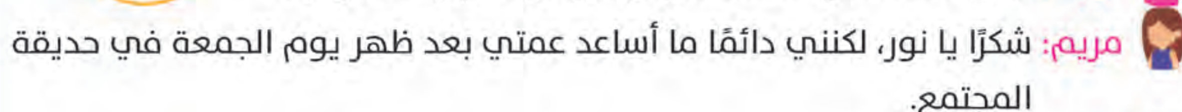
Maryam : Yes, it does. From just one square meter of roof garden, we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great place to meet people and make friends.

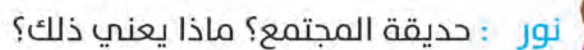
Nour : It sounds great, Maryam. We need more community roof gardens like that in our city!

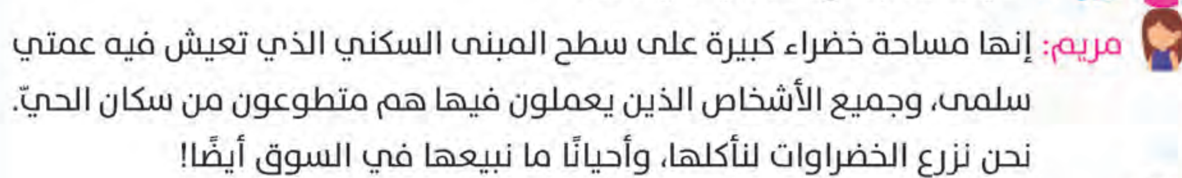
Lesson 1

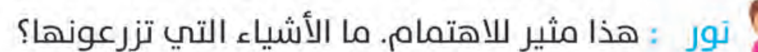
أين تذهب مريم أيام الجمعة؟

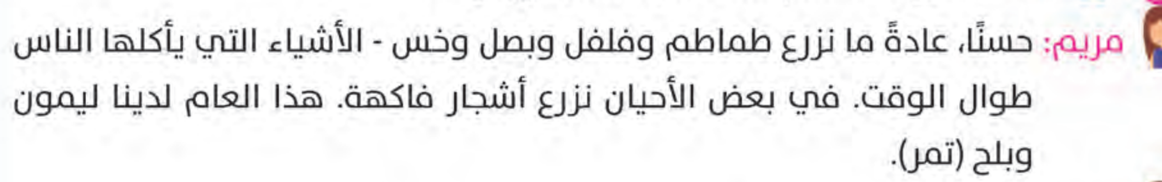

نور : ليس هناك مدرسة غدًا! هل تريدين أن تأتي إلى منزلي؟

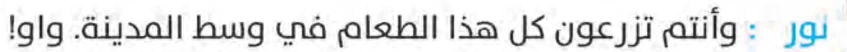

مريم: شكرًا يا نور، لكنني دائمًا ما أساعد عمتي بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة في حديقة المجتمع.

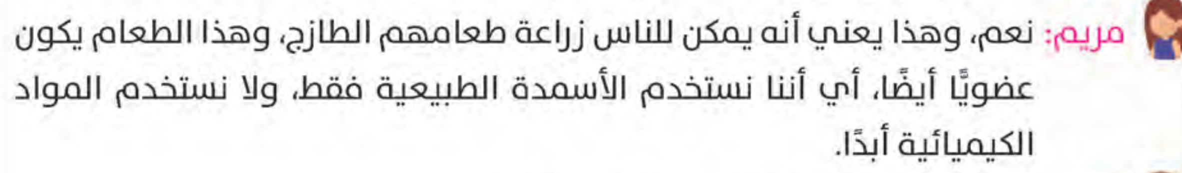

نور : حديقة المجتمع؟ ماذا يعني ذلك؟


مريم: إنها مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح المبنى السكني الذي تعيش فيه عمتي سلمى، وجميع الأشخاص الذين يعملون فيها هم متطوعون من سكان الحيّ. نحن نزرع الخضراوات لنأكلها، وأحيانًا ما نبيعها في السوق أيضًا!

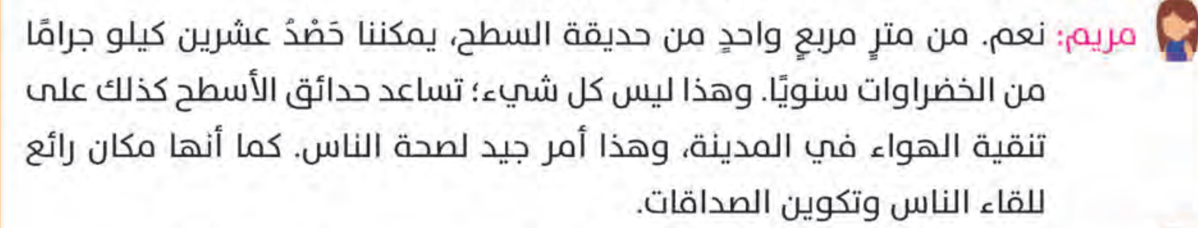

نور : هذا مثير للاهتمام. ما الأشياء التي تزرعونها؟


مريم: حسنًا، عادةً ما نزرع طماطم وفلفل وبصل وخس - الأشياء التي يأكلها الناس طوال الوقت. في بعض الأحيان نزرع أشجار فاكهة. هذا العام لدينا ليمون وبلح (تمر).


نور : وأنتم تزرعون كل هذا الطعام في وسط المدينة. واو!


مريم: نعم، وهذا يعني أنه يمكن للناس زراعة طعامهم الطازج، وهذا الطعام يكون عضويًا أيضًا، أي أننا نستخدم الأسمدة الطبيعية فقط، ولا نستخدم المواد الكيميائية أبدًا.

نور : هل تُنتِج حديقتكم الكثير من الخضراوات؟


مريم: نعم. من مترٍ مربعٍ واحدٍ من حديقة السطح، يمكننا حَصْدُ عشرين كيلو جرامًا من الخضراوات سنويًا. وهذا ليس كل شيء؛ تساعد حدائق الأسطح كذلك على تنقية الهواء في المدينة، وهذا أمر جيد لصحة الناس. كما أنها مكان رائع للقاء الناس وتكوين الصداقات.

نور : يبدو هذا رائعًا يا مريم. نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من حدائق الأسطح المجتمعية كهذه في مدينتنا!

The lesson notes

◄ عضوي ► organic

المقصود بكلمة "organic" هي المحاصيل التي تعتمد في زراعتها على الأسمدة الطبيعية، وعادةً ما يكون هذا النوع من الزراعة أقل إنتاجية من الزراعة غير العضوية، وأيضًا أعلى ثمنًا، ولكنه في نفس الوقت صحي أكثر للإنسان وأفيد لجسمه.
وعكسها كلمة "غير عضوي Inorganic"

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

roof – plant – neighborhood – garden – apartment

Nour : No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

Maryam: Thanks, Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community ① ....

Nour : What's that?

Maryam: It's a big green space on the ② .... of my Aunt Salma's ③ .... block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the ④ .... We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

aunt – clean – friends – grow – plants – roof – sell – tomorrow

Nour asks Maryam to go to her house ① .... , but Maryam goes to help her ② .... on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the ③ .... of an apartment block. They ④ .... vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they ⑤ .... them, too. Maryam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the ⑥ .... also help to ⑦ .... the air in the city, and the garden project is a good place to make new ⑧ ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. I live in a/an (villa - tent - apartment) on the fifth floor.
2. They are (volunteers - workers - gardeners). They take no money.
3. You can see most of my town from the (door - roof - garden) of my apartment block. It's a very high building.



4. In the garden, we (plant - harvest - eat) lots of vegetables and they begin to grow quickly.
5. We use natural (sun - fertilizers - water) when planting organic food.
6. After they (water - see - harvest) the vegetables, they eat them or sell them at the market.
7. We never use (natural fertilizers - chemicals - water) when planting organic food.
8. My community is people who live in my (neighborhood - school - club).

4 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. Where does she go on Fridays?	a) We never use chemicals.
2. We grow vegetables to eat,	b) clean the air in the city.
3. We use natural fertilizer.	c) They are all volunteers.
4. Does your garden produce fruit?	d) She goes to the community garden.
5. Roof gardens also help	e) and sometimes we sell them in the market.
	f) Yes, it does.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. does – Fridays – go – Where – Maryam – on?

▶ .... ?

2. Fridays – on – I – my aunt – help – always.



▶ ....

3. vegetables – to – grow – We – eat.

▶ ....

4. you – my house – Do – to come – want – to?

▶ .... ?

5. them – market – in – We – sell – the.

▶ ………………………………………………………………………… .

6. do – What – grow – things – you?

▶ ………………………………………………………………………… ?

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. thanks nour, but i always help my aunt on fridays

▶ …………………………………………………………………………

2. it's on the roof of my aunt salma's apartment block

▶ …………………………………………………………………………

3. we usually plant tomatoes peppers onions and lettuce

▶ …………………………………………………………………………

4. where does mustafa go on tuesdays

▶ …………………………………………………………………………

5. does your family have a garden

▶ …………………………………………………………………………

7 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Basma:

Tell her what you and the volunteers in your community do to help your neighborhood be cleaner and more beautiful, and to produce its needs of food. Your email address is farida@hotmail.com. And your friend's email address is basma@gmail.com.

From : ……………………

To : ……………………

Subject : ……………………,

…………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………

………………,

………………

Lesson 2 We Always Work Hard

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Prepositions

on holding	في إجازة	**at home**	في البيت
on weekends	في العطلات الأسبوعية	**get to**	يصل إلى
on Tuesday	في يوم الثلاثاء	**by bus**	بالاتوبيس
over time	بمرور الوقت	**find out**	يعرف - يكتشف
help with	يساعد في	**look after**	يعتني بـ

Other words

Join us	التحق بنا	urban locations	أماكن حضرية
Contact us	اتصل بنا - تَوَاصَل معنا	green space	مساحة خضراء
latest news	آخر الأخبار	green areas	مناطق خضراء
collect data	يجمع البيانات	foreign plants	نباتات تُزرع في غير موطنها الأصلي
information	معلومات	Earth Aid	مساعدة (إغاثة) الأرض
link	رابط (على الإنترنت)	gymnastics competition	مسابقة الجمباز

naturally	طبيعيًا - تلقائيًا	logo	شعار - لوجو
normally	بشكل طبيعي	research (n)	بحث علمي
effects	تأثيرات - آثار	movie theater	دار عرض سينمائي - دار عرض أفلام

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
join	يلتحق	joined	click	ينقر على	clicked
collect	يجمع	collected	want	يريد	wanted
call	يتصل	called	play	يلعب	played
prefer	يُفضِّل	preferred	live	يعيش	lived
follow	يتبع - يتابع	followed	offer	يعرض	offered
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after	work hard	يعمل بجدٍّ	worked hard

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
bring	يُحْضِر	brought	understand	يفهم	understood
give	يعطي	gave	go	يذهب	went
speak	يتكلم	spoke	find out	يكتشف - يعرف	found out

HOME ABOUT REQUEST INFO LATEST NEWS CONTACT US

Earth Aid

What is Mini Forest?



Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.

At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.
We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest.

We also usually work with local communities to plant and look after the forests over time. We collect data from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us. Click on the link to find out more.

مساعدة (إغاثة) الأرض

ما هي "ميني فورست"؟

"ميني فورست" هى منظمة تقوم بزراعة مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار في قلب مُدُنِنَا. تساعد هذه المناطق الخضراء الخاصة الناس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة.

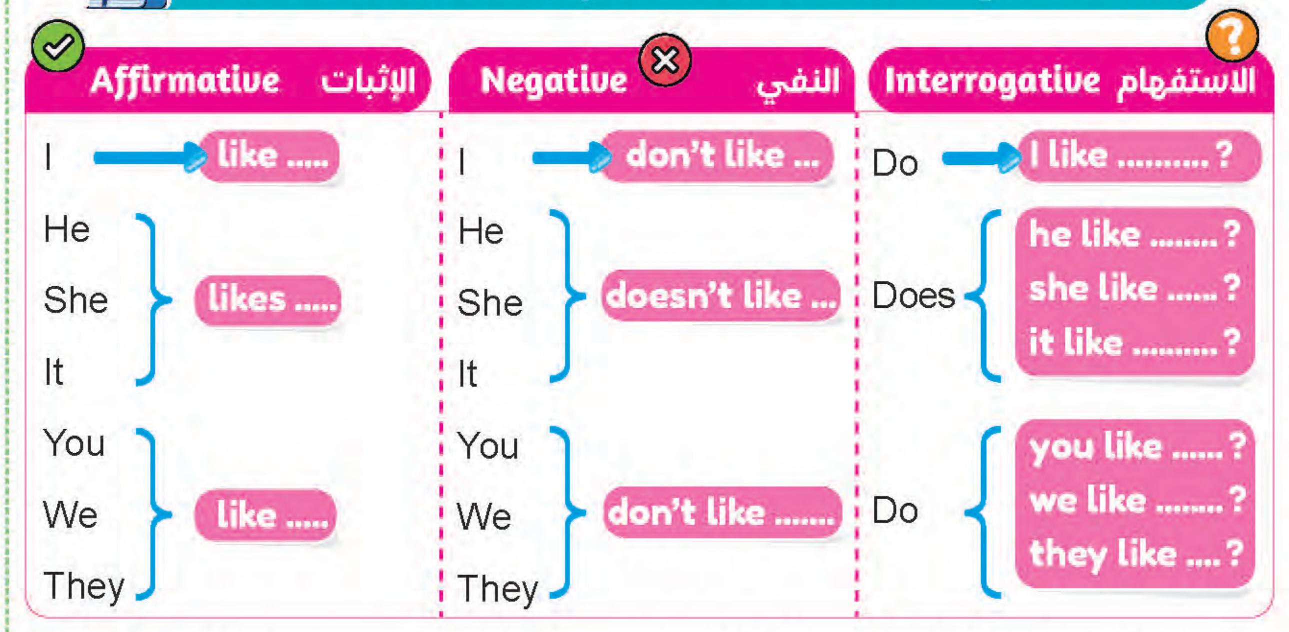
في منظمة «ميني فورست» الحياة البرية. نحن نعمل بِجِدٍّ دائما لتحديد الأماكن الحضرية المثالية لغاباتنا، حيث يحتاج الناس والحياة البرية إلى الطبيعة أكثر من غيرها. نحن لا نزرع نباتات غريبة عن بيئتنا في مشاريعنا، بل دائمًا ما نزرع أشجارًا تنمو تلقائيًا في منطقة. ونحن نهتم بهم بحرص حتى يصبحوا غابة صغيرة.

كما أننا نعمل مع المجتمعات المحلية لزراعة الغابات والعناية بها بمرور الوقت. نحن نجمع بيانات من كل غابة نزرعها عدة مرات في الشهر. ويساعدنا هذا على فهم آثار المساحة الخضراء الجديدة على الناس والحياة البرية والمناخ في المنطقة بمرور الوقت.

نادرًا ما يكون لدينا عدد كافٍ من المتطوعين للانضمام إلى حركة "ميني فورست"! لمساعدتنا في مشاريعنا، لذلك دائمًا ما نسعد عندما يتقدم لنا أشخاص لمساعدتنا". انقر على الرابط لمعرفة المزيد.

GRAMMAR STUDY

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط



Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → like	I → don't like ...	Do → I like .... ?
He / She / It → likes	He / She / It → doesn't like ...	Does → he like .... ? / she like ...... ? / it like .... ?
You / We / They → like	You / We / They → don't like	Do → you like ...... ? / we like .... ? / they like .... ?

- **We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.**

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أفعال متكررة الحدوث.

- I visit my cousins every week.
- He usually goes to school by bus.

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

- **We use some words with the present simple that are called (adverbs of frequency) such as:**

تُستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن المضارع البسيط، وتُسمى تلك الكلمات ظروف التكرار، مثل:

%	Adverb	Example
%100	always	My dad always has dinner with us.
%80	usually	Mustafa usually plays with me.
%60	often	Mom often helps me with my homework.
%30	sometimes	I sometimes buy my mom presents.
%5	rarely	We rarely go out after 10 pm.
%0	never	We never travel to Alexandria by bus.



Lesson 2

■ **We use these words before the main verb or after (verb to be).**

◀ تُستخدم هذه الكلمات قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (verb to be).

always	دائمًا
usually	عادة
often	غالبًا
sometimes	أحيانًا
rarely	نادرًا
never	أبدًا

- We usually play football on the weekend.
- Akram sometimes goes swimming with his friends.
- I always watch TV in the evening.
- I don't often see my school friends on weekends.
- Soha never helps in the kitchen.
- Ahmed is always good to his friends.
- My dad and mom are rarely angry with me.

How often كم مرة - كم عدد المرات

■ **We use (How often) to ask about the frequency of an action:**

◀ نستخدم (How often) للسؤال عن تكرار حدوث فعل.

◀ نجيب على السؤال البادئ بـ (How often) بإحدى طريقتين:

1. إما باستخدام أحد ظروف التكرار (adverbs of frequency).

- How often do you go to the club? ▶ I usually go to the club.
- How often does he walk to school? ▶ He never walks to school.
- How often does she draw pictures? ▶ She always draws pictures.

2. أو بذكر عدد المرات.

■ **We can use these time expressions to talk about how often we do something:**

once a (week)	مرة في (الأسبوع)	three times a (year)	ثلاث مرات في (السنة)
twice a (month)	مرتان في (الشهر)	every day	كل يوم

- How often do you work in the community garden?
  ▶ I work there two afternoons a week.
- How often does she visit her grandma?
  ▶ She visits her grandma twice a week.
- How often do you brush your teeth? ▶ I brush my teeth once a day.
- How often does he play football? ▶ He plays football three times a week.



تعبير (every day) ظرف زمان، ويوضع إما في بداية الجملة أو في نهايتها.

- How often do you buy sweets and chips?
  - I buy sweets and chips every day.
  - Every day, I buy sweets and chips.

Exercises  Lesson 



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wildlife – forest – areas – organization – nature

Mini Forest is an ① .... which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy ② .... and help our ③ .... We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small ④ ....

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Mini Forest is an organization which usually works with local communities to plant and look after the forests they plant over time. They collect data from every forest they plant a few times a month. This helps them understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area over time.

They rarely have enough people for all their projects, so they need more volunteers to join the Mini Forest organization!



Lesson 2

A Choose the correct answer:

1. They collect data from every (tree - forest - garden) they plant.
2. They (rarely - always - often) have enough people for all their projects.

B Answer these questions:

3. Why does the Mini Forest Organization work with local communities?
   ▶ ....
4. Who do they need to join to the Mini Forest organization?
   ▶ ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

nature – cities – volunteers – location – spaces

Rania : Where are you going, Sagda?
Sagda : I'm going to the Mini Forest Organization.
Rania : What is this organization?
Sagda : It's an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our ① ....
Rania : How is that?
Sagda : They plant lots of areas and make them green ② ....
Rania : Awesome! How can they choose these areas?
Sagda : They always work hard to find the best urban locations for the Mini Forests, where people and wildlife need ③ .... most.
Rania : What can I do to help them?
Sagda : They always need ④ .... for their projects. You can join them.
Rania : Yes. That's a good idea.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:



1. 10 pm – usually – in bed – before – I'm.

▶ ....

2. always – My dad – a healthy breakfast – in the morning – eats.

▶ ....

3. never – Donia and Wael – late – are – for school.

▶ ....

4. the dentist – you – go – How – do – often – to?

▶ .... ?

5. gives – sometimes – us – Our teacher – homework – on weekends.

▶ ....

6. rains – It – the Western Desert – rarely – in.

▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer:



1. The weather is (usually - never) sunny in Egypt in summer. SB
2. I (rarely - often) eat dates as a snack. I love them! SB
3. (How often - How ever) do you play football with your friends? SB
4. Samer (always - never) plays video games, He doesn't like them very much. SB
5. We (sometimes - always) go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach. SB
6. You (rarely - sometimes) call me now. Are you angry with me? SB
7. We don't like fish at all. We (often - never) eat it. SB
8. My aunt lives with us, so I (often - rarely) speak to her. SB



9. I (sometimes - never) do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evening. SB

10. Hani (rarely - often) plays football. He doesn't like sports. SB

11. My father (sometimes - always) drives to work. There is no train or bus there. SB

12. (What - Who - How) often do you watch TV?

13. He (goes rarely - rarely go - rarely goes) out when it's cold.

14. We (play usually - usually play - usually plays) together on Fridays.

15. She (isn't - don't - doesn't) get up late.

16. Hend (like - likes - liking) reading stories.

17. We (know - knows - are know) everything about keeping animals.

18. What sport does he (play - plays - playing)?

19. Lions (don't - doesn't - isn't) eat grass.

20. She doesn't (eat - eats - eating) her sandwiches.

21. Where (do - does - is) he go on the weekend?

22. She (never goes - never - goes never) to school late.

23. Soha (never is - never - is never) late for school.

24. How (many - much - often) does she visit her grandma?
▶ Twice a week.

25. It (never rain - rains never - never rains) in August.

26. Ola and her sister (are always - always are - is always) good to their teachers and friends.

27. How (many - often - much) do you brush your teeth?

28. I (usually visit - visit usually - usually visits) my grandparents every weekend.

29. She (often take - takes often - often takes) her pet animal to the park.



Lesson 3 Reading

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Wael's Favorite Place in New York



floor
طابق - دور



pass through
يمر عبر



railway line
خط سكة حديد



local residents
سكان محليون



hang out
يتسكع - يخرج مع



species of plants
أنواع نباتات



art works
أعمال فنية

theater performance
عرض مسرحي

The Selfish Giant



selfish
أناني





giant
عملاق





season
موسم



village
قرية



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Prepositions

make ... into	يُحوّل ... إلى	go out	يخرج
on the sixteenth floor	في الطابق السادس عشر	come back	يعود - يرجع
at night	ليلاً	on their way home	في طريقهم للبيت
wake up	يستيقظ	at home	في البيت
for a long time	لفترة طويلة	at the end of the story	في نهاية القصة

Other words

soft, green grass	عشب أخضر ناعم	tiny boy	صبي ضئيل الحجم
lovely sound	صوت جميل	quiet	هادئ
winter	الشتاء	silent	صامت
spring	الربيع	noisy	مزعج
miss home (v)	يفتقد الوطن	famous	مشهور
the days pass	تَمُرّ الأيام	great view	منظر رائع - إطلالة رائعة

Definitions تعريفات (SB Student's Book)

pass through	: goes from one place to another
railway line	: a road for trains
local residents	: people who live in a neighborhood
hang out	: spend time with, relax together
miss	: feel sad that you can't have or see something

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
miss	يفتقد	missed	climb up	يتسلق	climbed up
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	open	يفتح	opened
walk	يمشي	walked	move	يتحرك	moved
watch	يشاهد	watched	create	يُنشئ	created
turn	يتحول	turned	taste	يتذوق	tasted
cover	يغطي	covered	share	يشارك - يتشارك	shared
laugh	يضحك	laughed	arrive	يَصِل	arrived

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
run	يجري	ran	see	يرى	saw
hang out	يخرج - يتسكع	hung out	fly away	يطير بعيدًا	flew away
tell	يُخْبِر	told	write	يكتب	wrote
sing	يُغَنِّي	sang	spend time	يقضي وقت	spent time
build	يبني	built	come back	يعود - يرجع	came back
fall	يقع - يسقط	fell	stand	يقف	stood
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	go out	يخرج	went out

Pronunciation



(th) = /θ/		(s) = /s/	
thumb	إصبع الإبهام	sum	حاصل جمع - مسألة حسابية
think	يفكر - يعتقد	sink	حوض - يغوص
thick	سميك	sick	مريض
throw	يقذف - يرمي	so	لذلك
mouth	فم	mouse	فأر
path	طريق	pass	يمر - يجتاز
thing	شيء	sing	يغني
thirsty	عطشان	seed	بذرة
thanks	شكرًا	stalk	ساق النبات
bath	حوض الاستحمام - حمام	bus	حافلة - أتوبيس
thunder	رعد	sunset	غروب الشمس
threaten	يتوعّد - يُهدّد	sunny	مشمس

The lesson notes

▶ the High Line

- هو عبارة عن متنزه أخضر يبلغ طوله حوالي 2.5 كيلو مترًا، وهو طريق أخضر كان في الماضي مسارًا لسكك حديد نيويورك المركزية، ويقع في الجانب الغربي من حيّ مانهاتن في مدينة نيويورك الأمريكية.

▶ 1980s

- المقصود بإضافة حرف (s) في نهاية التاريخ هكذا هو الإشارة إلى فترة الثمانينيات، أي منذ بداية عام (1980) وحتى نهاية عام (1989).




Read and learn



Search

Hi Samer,

How are you? I'm well and New York is great! Our apartment block is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city.

New York has a lot of green spaces. There are also projects to create new parks and green spaces in parts of the city that no-one uses now, like the famous High Line – do you know about it?

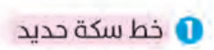
Years ago, the High Line was a railway line ❶, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some local residents ❷ then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space ,with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It's 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theatre performance, eat delicious food, do a yoga class or go running, or just hang out ❸ with your friends. I think it's my favorite place in New York. It passes through ❹ our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. It's really cool. Here is one of my photos of it.

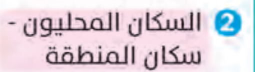
How are things in Alexandria? I miss ❺ home. New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.

There are lots of different restaurants here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. The restaurants in Alexandria are better. I think the food is fresher and tastes more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much!

Write soon and tell me all your news,

Wael





3 نخرج مع - نتسكع مع - نقضي وقتًا مع

4 يمر عبر

5 يفتقد

The Selfish Giant



In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away.

Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand, usually his garden is beautiful in spring. What is wrong? Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound. A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.

He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back through a hole in the garden wall. Now they are sitting in the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are opening around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.

But in one corner of the garden it is still winter. The giant sees a tiny boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly the giant understands everything. "Now I know why the spring didn't come," he says, "because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its branches and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," he says, "good Things happen."

العملاق الأناني

في قرية في الريف، يعيش عملاق لديه حديقة خلّابة. وفي حديقته أشجار عالية وزهور جميلة وعُشب أخضر ناعم. وطيور ملونة تغرّد على الأشجار ونحل على النباتات. بعد ظهر كل يوم، وفي طريق عودتهم من المدرسة إلى المنزل، يأتي أطفال القرية للّعب في حديقة العملاق. الحديقة الجميلة دائمًا ما تجعل الأطفال سعداء.

لكن العملاق الأنانيّ لا يريد مشاركة حديقته مع أحد، وفي أحد الأيام، قام ببناء جدار كبير حولها. والآن لا يأتي الأطفال إليها للّعب. تمر الأيام، والحديقة دائمًا فارغة وساكنة. ويبدأ العشب الأخضر يتحول ببطءٍ إلى اللون البنيّ، وتبدأ الأوراق في التساقط من الأشجار. ثم يبدأ الثلج يغطي الحديقة وتطير جميع الطيور الصغيرة والنحل بعيدًا.

يحلّ الربيع على القرية، لكن لا يزال الشتاء سائدًا في حديقة العملاق. كل شيء تحت الثلج. والعملاق لا يفهم، فعادةً ما تكون حديقته جميلة في الربيع. ما المشكلة؟ ثم في صباح أحد الأيام، يستيقظ ويسمع صوتًا جميلًا. طائر أزرق صغير يغني على شجرة بالخارج. ثم يسمع العملاق صوتًا جميلًا آخر - أطفال يضحكون.

ينظر العملاق من النافذة ويرى أن الأطفال قد عادوا من خلال ثقب في جدار الحديقة. الآن هم جالسون على الأشجار. تعود الأوراق على الأشجار إلى خضرتها مرة أخرى، وتتفتّح أزهار حولها. يشعر العملاق بسعادة غامرة لرؤية حديقته تنمو مرة أخرى.

لكن لا يزال الشتاء سائدًا في أحد أركان الحديقة. يرى العملاق صبيًا ضئيل الحجم يقف هناك. إنه أصغر من أن يستطيع تسلُّق الشجرة. فجأة يفهم العملاق كل شيء. ويقول: "الآن أنا أعرف لماذا لم يأتِ الربيع، لأنني كنتُ أنانيًا بشأن حديقتي". يخرج العملاق ويساعد الطفل الصغير على تسلُّق الشجرة. فجأة، تتفتّح جميع الأوراق على الشجرة وتطير الطيور إلى أغصانها وتبدأ في الغناء. عندما لا تكون أناني تتحقق الأشياء الجيدة.

Tip!

For True/False exercises, first read the sentences carefully. Underline the key words and look for similar words in the text. Compare the information in the sentences and in the text, then choose your answer.

للإجابة على تمارين الصواب / الخطأ، اقرأ الجُمَل بعناية أولاً. ضع خطًا تحت الكلمات الرئيسية وابحث عن كلمات مشابهة لها في النص. قارن المعلومات الواردة في الجُمَل والنص، ثم اختر إجابتك.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. The lovely garden always	a) It's still winter.
2. Our apartment is	b) to see his garden grow again.
3. The giant feels so happy	c) makes the children happy.
4. New York is very noisy,	d) and soft, green grass.
5. In the garden, there are beautiful flowers	e) but Alexandria is much quieter.
	f) on the sixteenth floor.

2 Read and match "A" with "B":

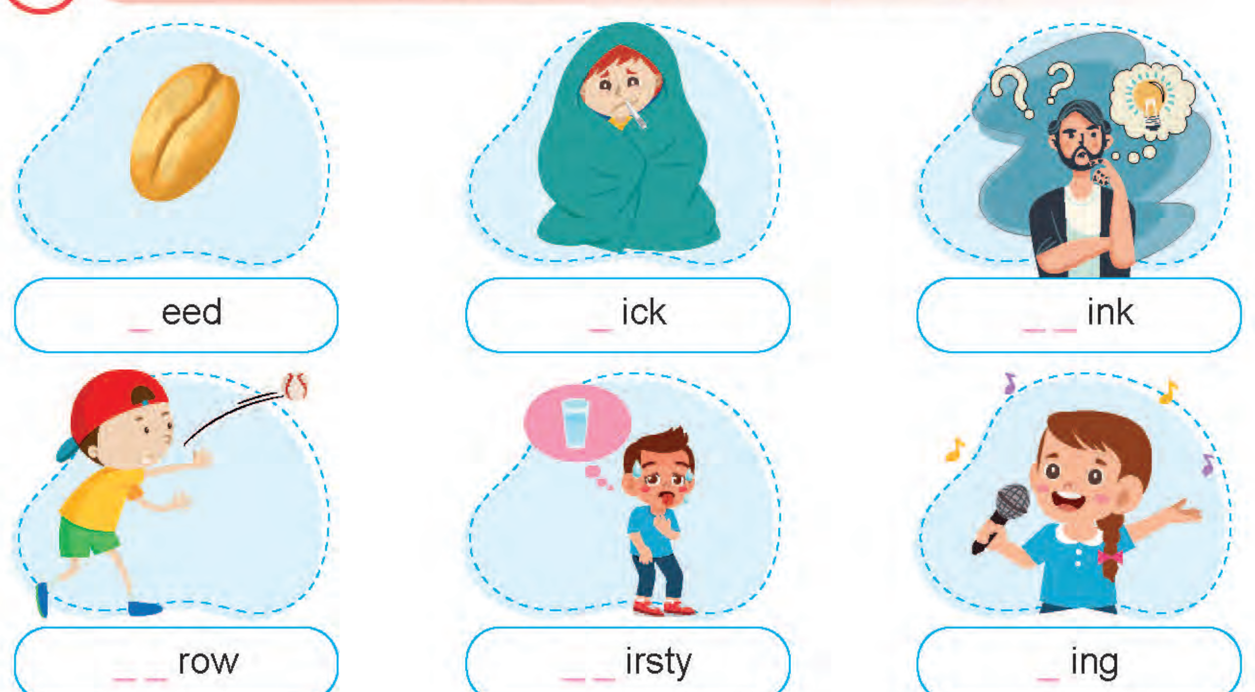
'A'	'B'
1. To pass through means	a) people who live in a neighborhood.
2. The railway line is	b) to spend time with, relax together.
3. To hang out means	c) to go from one place to another.
4. Local residents are	d) to feel sad that you can't have or see something.
5. To miss means	e) a road for trains.
	f) is much quieter.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

create – famous – neighborhood – quieter – spaces

New York has a lot of green ① .... There are also a lot of projects to ② .... new parks and green areas in parts of the city that no one uses now, like the ③ .... High Line. It passes through our ④ ...., so I often go there with my parents. It's really cool.

4 Read and complete the words with "th" or "s":



5 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. In his garden, there are tall (flowers - grass - trees).
2. The lovely garden always makes the children (angry - happy - hungry).

B Answer these questions:

3. Where does the giant live?
   ▶ ....
4. What do the children do on their way home from school?
   ▶ ....



6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. spaces – has – New York – of green – a lot.

▶ ....

2. Our – is – on the – apartment – fifth floor.

▶ ....

3. through – You – walk – can – the – gardens.

▶ ....

4. is – noisy – a – New York – very – city.

▶ ....

5. There – many – aren't – in – parks – New York.

▶ ....

6. garden – happy – children – The lovely – the – makes.

▶ ....

7. giant – The – in – lives – village – a.

▶ ....

8. tall – the garden – are – There – in – trees.

▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what is wael's favorite place in new york

▶ ....

2. no i don't want any more candy

▶ ....

3. let's have a picnic in the park north of giza

▶ ....

4. can you give me the blue crayon please

▶ ....





8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A visit to Alexandria"

Ideas to help you:

last summer - Alexandria - parents - beaches - restaurants - library - enjoy - happy

Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

Donia's Email to her Friend Laila in Luxor





city center وسط المدينة



the third floor الطابق الثالث



in the distance من بعيد - في الأفق



honey عسل نحل



pretty yucky مقرف (مقزز) للغاية



Scottish food طعام إسكتلندي



Egyptian food طعام مصري

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

infographic	مُخَطَّط معلومات بياني	**interesting**	ممتع - شيِّق - مثير للاهتمام
squares	ميادين	**write back soon**	راسِلني قريبًا

Countries and Famous Places

Egypt	مصر	**The famous Edinburgh Castle**	قلعة إدنبرة الشهيرة
Scotland	إسكتلندا	**The Meadows Park**	ميدوز بارك (منتزه ميدوز)
Luxor	مدينة الأقصر		

How to write an email
كيف تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني





The sender's email البريد الإلكتروني للمُرسِل → **From**: Donia@qwikmail.com

The receiver's email البريد الإلكتروني للمُرسَل إليه → **To**: Laila@egyptmail.com

The title of the email عنوان لموضوع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني → **Subject**: My new life in Scotland

Opening phrase عبارة افتتاحية → Hi Laila,

The email body نص رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

How are things with you?

I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad and Hani. It's really interesting!

Our apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side ❶ of the street, so we have a great view over the trees ❷. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends ❸, so there's always something to see there. In the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle ❹, too!

I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and especially the food! Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge ❺. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but it tastes pretty yucky ❻! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames! The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school and we study together and sometimes we watch TV – in English!

Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.

Lots of love, ← **Closing phrase** خاتمة

Donia ← **Signature** توقيع

❶ الجانب الآخر
❷ إطلالة رائعة على الأشجار
❸ مقابلة الاصدقاء
❹ قلعة ❺ عصيدة - حساء الشعير
❻ مقزز للغاية

Tip!

An informal email is a message you write to friends or family.
An informal email should be friendly in tone, use informal language, and include opening and closing phrases.

البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي هو رسالة تكتبها إلى أحد الأصدقاء أو فرد من العائلة. يجب أن يكون البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي ودودًا في نبرته، وأن تُستخدم لغة غير رسمية فيه، وأن يتضمن عبارات افتتاحية وختامية.

Phrases from the email and their function in the text:

- Opening phrase ▶▶▶ Hi Laila
- Closing phrase ▶▶▶ Lots of love
- A question to reader ▶▶▶ How are things with you?
- A request to reader ▶▶▶ Please write back soon
- Informal expressions ▶▶▶ a really cool park, it tastes pretty yucky

Exercises on Lessons 4 5





1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. People use the park a lot for	a) Egyptian food is better.
2. Scottish food is OK, but	b) The weather and the Egyptian food.
3. The people here are nice and	c) tell me all the news from home.
4. What does she miss about Egypt?	d) Lots of love.
5. Please write back soon and	e) sports and meeting friends.
	f) I have a lot of new friends.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

floor – apartment – view – street – sports

I'm finally in Scotland. Our ① .... is in the city center. It's on the third ② .... and the park is on the other side of the ③ ...., so we have a great ④ .... over the trees. People use the park a lot for so many things, so there's always something to see there.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. are – How – with – things – you?

▶ .... ?

2. apartment – Our – is – the city – in – center.

▶ ....

3. have – We – view – a great – over – the trees.

▶ ....

4. use – for – the – park – meeting friends – People.

▶ ....

5. people – porridge – Scottish – love – eating.

▶ ....

6. have – I – of – friends – new – a lot.

▶ ....

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i m finally in scotland

▶ ....

2. what does she miss about egypt

▶ ....



3. she lives in london the capital of england

▶ ....

4. what s your favorite subject, nahla

▶ ....

5. i eat scottish food, but egyptian food is better

▶ ....

5 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Hani:

Tell him about your new life in England. Write about two things that you miss about Egypt. Your email address is fares@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is hani@yahoo.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....,

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

.................,

....





خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (234) آخر الكتاب.

1. Mini Forest plants trees in the middle of our (deserts – cities – roofs).
2. These special green areas help people enjoy (nature – work – crops).
3. They look after trees until they become a small (garden – park – forest).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3Ms)

local residents – view – park – apartment

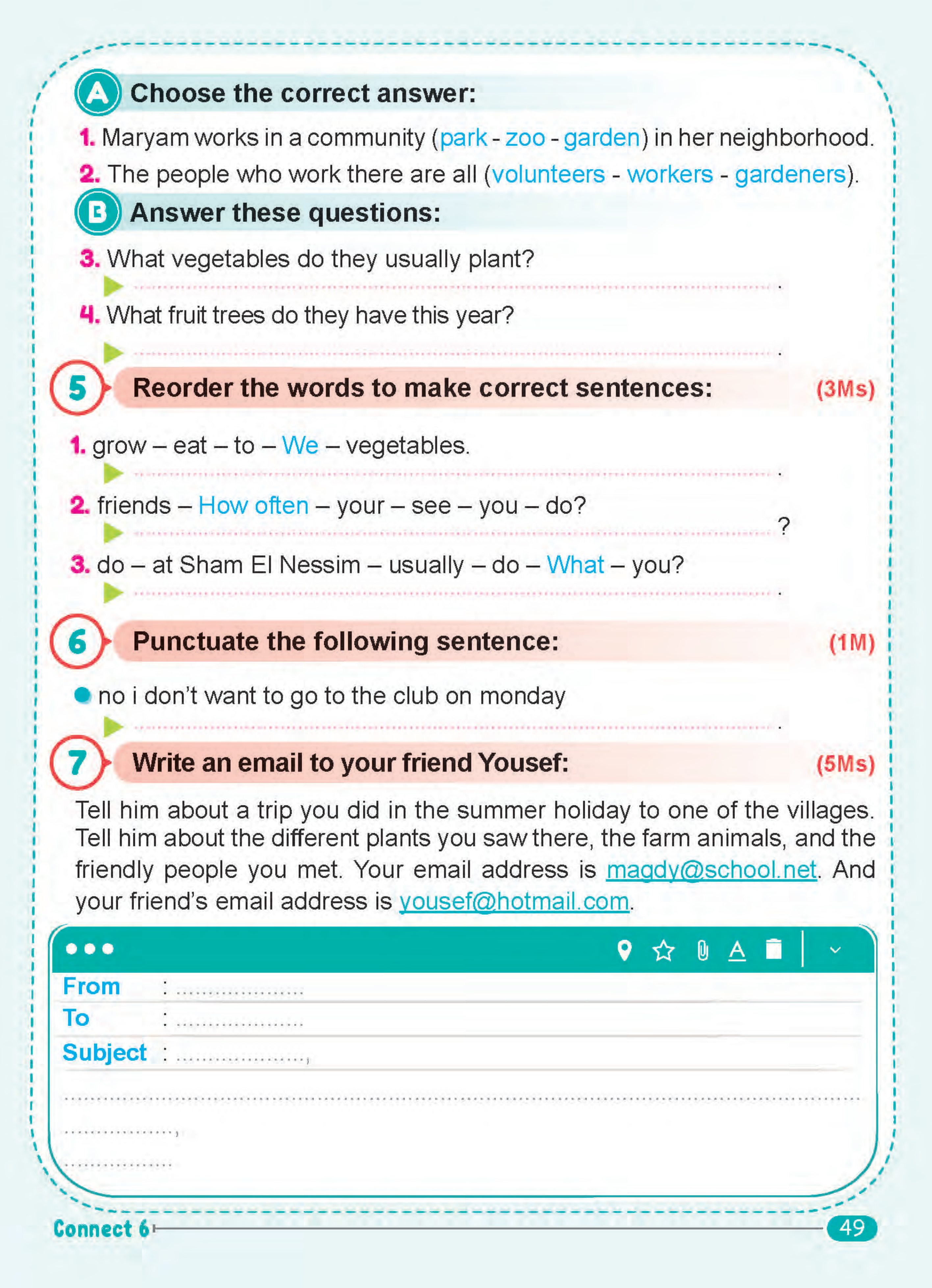
Samir : How are you, Wael?
Wael : I'm well, and New York is great!
Samir : Do you like your ① .... there?
Wael : Yes, so much. Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great ② ....
Samir : What can you see from your balcony?
Wael : I can see the High Line.
Samir : What is it?
Wael : It's a big, long ③ .... in New York.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Uncle Hussein (usually go - goes usually - usually goes) to his work by bus.
2. How (many - old - often) does he play basketball?
   ▶ He plays basketball every day at school.
3. Mr Samir (is always - always is - are always) helpful.
4. I go out with my friends twice (some - a - the) week.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Maryam works in a community garden. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. They grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the market, too! They usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. Sometimes they also plant fruit trees. This year they have lemons and dates.



A Choose the correct answer:

1. Maryam works in a community (park - zoo - garden) in her neighborhood.
2. The people who work there are all (volunteers - workers - gardeners).

B Answer these questions:

3. What vegetables do they usually plant?
▶ ....
4. What fruit trees do they have this year?
▶ ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. grow – eat – to – We – vegetables.
▶ ....
2. friends – How often – your – see – you – do?
▶ .... ?
3. do – at Sham El Nessim – usually – do – What – you?
▶ ....

6 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- no i don't want to go to the club on monday

▶ ....

7 Write an email to your friend Yousef: (5Ms)

Tell him about a trip you did in the summer holiday to one of the villages. Tell him about the different plants you saw there, the farm animals, and the friendly people you met. Your email address is magdy@school.net. And your friend's email address is yousef@hotmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,
....
................,
....

Test 2 on Unit 1

Total
30

نصا الاستماع موجود صفحة **(234)** آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)



1. In a (town – city – village – desert), in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden.
2. In his garden there are tall (flowers – grass – walls – trees).
3. Every (morning – afternoon – evening – night), the local children come to play in the giant's garden.

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. The .... garden is a big green space on the roof of an apartment block.
2. The people who work there are all volunteers from the ....
3. They grow .... to eat.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. She (usually go - goes usually- usually goes - go usually) to the club.
2. We go to Alexandria once (some - any - a - the) year.
3. How (many - much - old - often) do you work in the community garden?
   ▶ I work there every weekend.
4. My parents (are rarely - rarely are - is rarely - have rarely) angry with me.

4 Read and match "A" with "B": (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. In the garden, there are	a) Thanks, but I always help my aunt on Fridays.
2. There are lots of different restaurants here,	b) sports and meeting friends.
3. We need more volunteers	c) birds singing in the trees.
4. Do you want to come to my house?	d) to join the Mini Forest organization!
5. People use the park a lot for	e) local communities.
	f) but the food doesn't taste like the food at home.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

The great forests of the world are very important. These forests are like oceans of trees. They are full of thousands of different kinds of plants and animals. However, we are cutting down the trees because we need wood and we need more land for food. So the world's forests are getting smaller. If these forests are cut down, a lot of plants and animals will disappear from the world. The land will look like deserts. Crops will not grow there. The weather will get very hot and the climate of the world will change.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. We cut down trees because we need more (crops - wood - forests - fruit).
2. The world's forests are getting (bigger - larger - smaller - better).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
4. What will happen to the climate if these forests disappear?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. do – things – grow – What – you? ▶ .... ?
2. a lot of – Does – vegetables – your – produce – garden? ▶ .... ?
3. lives - family – Wael's - a tall - in - building. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- are dina and yasmin good at planting trees ▶ ....

8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"Parks"

▶ Ideas to help you:

parks - important - green - people - walk - sports - read - paint - kites - keep - clean

....
....
....
....
....



Unit 2 We are all different

نحن جميعًا مختلفون

In this unit I will ....

- listen, read, and write about people's personalities.
- make clear what people, places, and things I'm talking about using who, which, and where.
- describe my own and other people's feelings.
- say the sounds /ʌ/ and /æ/.
- write an paragraph explaining the positive and negative qualities of something.
- make a leaflet about your school.



Unit 2

Lesson 1 He's very clever



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

Adjectives


friendly ودود


shy خجول - خجلان


calm هادئ



clever ماهر - شاطر


polite مؤدب - مُهذب


messy فوضوي - غير مُرَتَّب


nervous متوتر- قَلِق


organized مُنظَّم

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

More adjectives

kind	عطوف - طيب	tidy	مرتب
nice	لطيف	intelligent	ذكي
funny	مضحِك	quiet	هادئ
helpful	متعاون	relaxed	مسترخٍ - هادئ
careful	حَذِر - حريص	worried	قلق - قلقان

Other words

a bit nervous	متوتر قليلاً (بعض الشيء)	carefully	بحِرص - بِحَذَر
Don't worry.	لا تقلق.	correctly	بشكل صحيح
I'm not sure.	لستُ متأكدًا.	show respect	يُظهر احترام

break	استراحة - فُسحة	extra copy	نسخة إضافية
textbooks	كتب مدرسية	worksheets	ملازم دراسية - كراسة التدريبات

Prepositions

good at	ماهر في - جيد في	Welcome to	مرحبًا بك في ......
help with	يساعد في	at home	في البيت
worried about	قلق بشأن	Come on.	هيا. - تعال.
take you around	يتجول بك - يأخذك في جولة	talk to	يتحدث مع (إلى) "شخص"
nice to others	لطيف مع الآخرين	talk about "something"	يتحدث عن "شيء"

Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

friendly	: nice to others, helpful
shy	: worried about talking to people, quiet
clever	: intelligent, good at school work
polite	: speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect
messy	: not tidy or organized
organized	: tidy, careful
nervous	: not calm, worried

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
look	ينظر	looked	relax	يسترخي	relaxed
ask	يسأل	asked	paint	يُلوّن	painted

Present		Past	Present		Past
listen	يستمع	listened	guess	يُخمِّن	guessed
need	يحتاج	needed	stay with	يبقى مع	stayed with
help	يُساعد	helped	share	يتشارك - يشارك	shared
start	يبدأ	started	organize	يُنظِّم	organized
talk	يتحدث	talked	like	يحب	liked
offer	يعرض - يُقدِّم	offered	describe	يَصِف	described
laugh	يضحك	laughed	worry	يقلق	worried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
write	يكتب	wrote	know	يعرف	knew
read	يقرأ	read	go	يذهب	went
do	يفعل	did	meet	يقابل	met
feel	يشعر	felt	show	يُظهِر	showed
get	يحصل على	got	draw	يرسم	drew
take	يأخذ	took	speak	يتحدث	spoke
find	يجد	found	make	يصنع	made

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The way you move gives other people information about your personality. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting. People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

إن الطريقة التي تتحرك بها تُوَصِّل للآخرين معلومات عن شخصيتك. كل شخص لديه طريقة مختلفة في التحرُّك، تمامًا كما لكل منا خط يد فريد. الأشخاص الذين يتحركون بطرق متشابهة غالبًا ما يصبحون أصدقاء ويعملون معًا بشكل جيد.



How does Hazem feel today?

Asser : Hi, Hazem. I'm Asser. You look worried. Is everything OK?

Hazem : Hi, Asser! It's my rst day at school and I feel a bit nervous and shy.

Asser : Don't worry, we are all friendly. I can help you get to know the school.

Hazem : Really! Can you?

Asser : Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at break!! Let's go meet some of my friends. Look! There's Basel. Hey, Basel!

Basel : Hi Asser!

Asser : Hazem, this is Basel. He's very clever and he's good at math. You can ask him if you need any help with your homework! Basel, this is Hazem. He's starting school here today.

Basel : Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

Asser : He's so polite!

Basel : Thanks! Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?

Hazem : I'm not sure. I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit messy. I'm not sure which textbooks I already have.

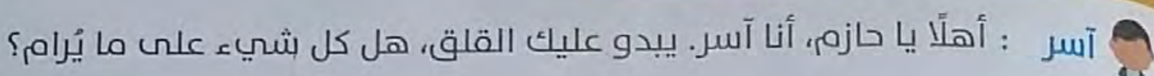
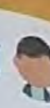
Basel : We can share my book today. And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...

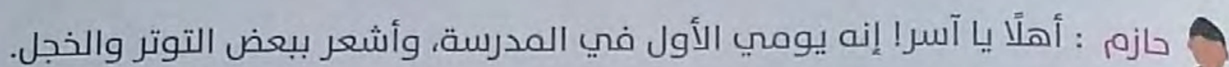
Hazem : Wow! You're really organized. Thanks, Basel!

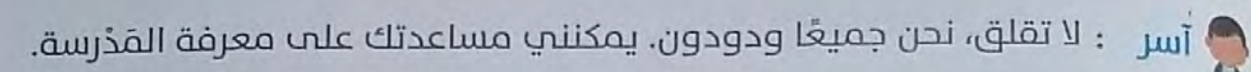


Asser : Come on, I'll show you where the science classroom is.

كيف يشعر حازم اليوم؟



آسر : أهلًا يا حازم، أنا آسر. يبدو عليك القلق، هل كل شيء على ما يُرام؟

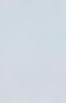

حازم : أهلًا يا آسر! إنه يومي الأول في المدرسة، وأشعر ببعض التوتر والخجل.


آسر : لا تقلق، نحن جميعًا ودودون. يمكنني مساعدتك على معرفة المَدْرسة.

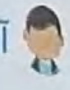
حازم : حقًا! هل يمكنك ذلك؟


آسر : بالتأكيد. يمكنني أن آخذك في جولة، وأن أُريك مكان فصلك، وأن أبقى معك في الفسحة! لنذهب ونلتقِ ببعض أصدقائي. انظر! هذا باسل. مرحبًا يا باسل!

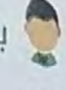
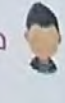

باسل : أهلًا يا آسر.


آسر : حازم، هذا باسل. إنه ماهر جدًا، وهو جيد في الرياضيات. إذا احتجت إلى أي مساعدة في واجبك المنزلي، يمكنك أن تطلب منه! باسل، هذا حازم. وهذا أول يوم له هنا في المدرسة.


باسل : أهلًا يا حازم. مرحبًا بك في مدرستنا.


آسر : إنه مهذب جدًا!


باسل : شكرًا! هل حصلت على كل كتبك يا حازم؟



حازم : لستُ متأكدًا. لديّ الكثير من الكتب في غرفتي في البيت، لكنني فوضويّ بعض الشيء. لستُ متأكدًا أيّ من الكتب المدرسية لديّ بالفعل.



باسل : يمكننا التشارك في كتابي اليوم. ولدي نسخة إضافية من كراسة التدريبات ...


حازم : مذهل! أنت منظم للغاية. شكرًا يا باسل!


آسر : هيا بنا، سأُريك مكان فصل العلوم.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

break - clever - nervous - friendly - feel

Asser : Hi, Hazem. I'm Asser. You look worried. Is everything OK?

Hazem : Hi, Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel a bit ① .... and shy.

Asser : Don't worry, we are all ② .... I can help you get to know the school.

Hazem : Really! Can you?

Asser : Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at ③ ....! Let's go meet some of my friends.Look! There's Basel. Hey, Basel!

Basel : Hi Asser!

Asser : Hazem, this is Basel. He's very ④ .... and he's good at math.

Basel : Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

2 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. polite	a) worried about talking to people, quiet
2. messy	b) tidy, careful
3. organized	c) not calm, worried
4. nervous	d) speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect
5. friendly	e) not tidy or organized
6. clever	f) nice to others, helpful
7. shy	g) intelligent, good at school work

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Jana is very (helpful - nervous - shy). She always helps people.
2. Omar is very (messy - calm - funny). He makes me laugh all the time.
3. Salma is (tidy - friendly - careful). She likes talking to people.
4. John is (good - calm - bad) at art. He can draw and paint very well.
5. Hani is (nervous - polite - messy). He shows respect to everyone.
6. Salah is (kind - messy - friendly). There are lots of books and clothes on his bedroom floor.
7. I was (nervous - nice - noisy) on my first day at school because I didn't know anyone there.
8. Miss Amira is very (kind - worried - nervous). All the students love her.
9. He is very (nervous - clever - messy). He always gets the full mark.
10. We all keep (calm - worried - noisy) in the library.
11. My little sister is very (intelligent - organized - shy). She's always worried about talking to people.
12. My sister is always (nervous - messy - organized) and tidy.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. Hazem - How - feel - does - today?

▶ .... ?

2. are - very - all - friendly - We.

▶ ....

3. I - bit - a - nervous - feel.

▶ ....

4. all - Do - have - you - books - your?

▶ .... ?

5. share - book - We - my - today - can.

▶ ....

6. are - organized - really - You.

▶ ....

7. shows - everyone - He - respect - to.

▶ ....



8. has - She - black - long - hair.

▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what does basel offer to share with his friend

▶ ....

2. school starts in september

▶ ....

3. do you have all your books yet, hazem

▶ ....

4. i don't go to school on friday or saturday

▶ ....

5. how does mustafa feel today

▶ ....

6 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Aliaa:

Tell her how your first day at school was, the new friends you made, and your new teachers. Your email address is malak@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is aliaa@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....
....
....
....
....................,
....

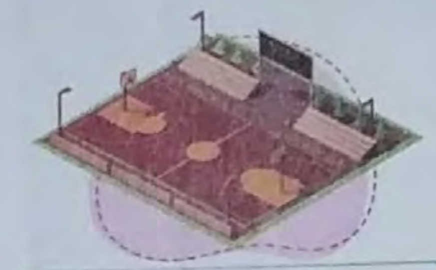
Lesson 2 We are proud of our school!



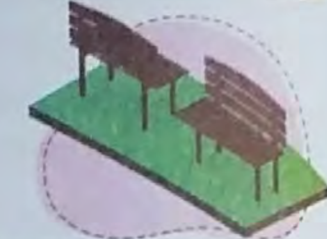
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Physical Education
مادة التربية البدنية - الألعاب



The West Court
الملعب الغربي - الساحة الغربية



benches
مقاعد



gymnasium
صالة الألعاب الرياضية



gymnastics
رياضة الجمباز



Information Technology (IT)
مادة تكنولوجيا المعلومات



laboratories
مختبرات - مَعَامِل



do experiments
يُجْري تجارب



equipment
معدّات - أدوات



math department
قسم الرياضيات



tourist information website
موقع معلومات سياحية



fantasy TV series
مسلسل تلفزيوني عن قصة خيالية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Prepositions

Welcome to	مرحبًا بكم في	find out	يكتشف - يعرف
proud of	فخور بـ	look for	يبحث عن
popular with	محبوب لدى - يحظى بشعبية لدى	in the future	في المستقبل
interested in	مهتم بـ	on a planet	على كوكب

Other words

pharmacy	صيدلية	water fountain	نافورة ماء
medicine	دواء	open area	منطقة مفتوحة
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	playing field	ساحة اللعب
spaceship	سفينة فضائية	problem	مشكلة
all age groups	جميع الفئات العمرية	run	يُدِير

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
mention	يذكر	mentioned	happen	يحدث	happened
show	يُريه	showed	travel	يسافر	travelled
contact	يتواصل - يتصل	contacted	love	يحب	loved
borrow	يستعير	borrowed	live	يعيش	lived
call	يُسَمِّي	called	decide	يُقَرِّر	decided
return	يعود	returned	study	يَدْرُس	studied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find out	يكتشف - يعرف	found out	buy	يشتري	bought
grow	ينمو - يزرع	grew	tell	يُخْبِر	told

Present		Past
run	يُدِير	ran
sit	يجلس	sat
fly	يطير - يسافر جوًّا	flew

Present		Past
find	يَجِدْ	found
hide	يختبئ	hid
take place	يحدُث	took place



Read and learn

El Fouad School

Home About Contact

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. We are proud of our new, modern buildings and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the map and find out where the main buildings are, and what we use them for.

1 The Ahmed Zewail Building
This is the place where students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories. These laboratories have all the equipment which classes need to do experiments.

2 The West Court
This is a large open area where students spend time outside. There is a playground and playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

3 The IT Building
This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for their Information Technology lessons. We have over 50 desktop computers, plus laptops and tablets which students can borrow.

4 The 2024 Gym
The yellow building is our new gymnasium. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during Physical Education lessons. There are some teachers who run after-school sports clubs here too, like five-a-side football (Mr Afifi, math department), and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).



الصفحة الرئيسية عن المدرسة اتصل بنا

مدرسة الفؤاد

مرحبا بكم في مدرسة الفؤاد المكان الذي نحن فخورن به. نحن فخورون بمبانينا الجديدة والحديثة، ويسعدنا أن نعرضها لكم. برجاء دراسة الخريطة ومعرفة مكان المباني الرئيسية ولأي غرض نستخدمها.

1 مبنى أحمد زويل

هذا هو المكان الذي يدرس فيه الطلاب العلوم. هناك أربعة فصول ومعملين جديدين. يحتوي هذان المعملان على جميع المعدات التي تحتاجها الفصول لإجراء التجارب.

2 الملعب الغربي

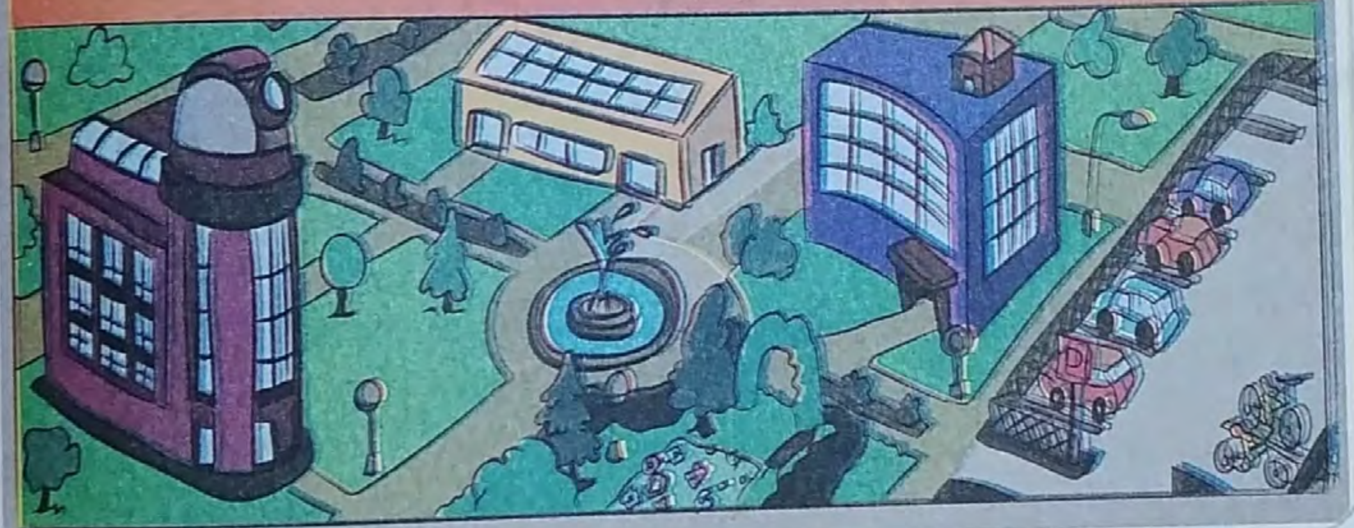
هذه منطقة مفتوحة كبيرة يقضي فيها الطلاب الفُسحة. يوجد ملعب وساحة للعب. وهناك أيضًا مقاعد للجلوس عليها تحت الأشجار ونافورة مياه. يمكن للأطفال أيضًا أن يزرعوا نباتات مع الأستاذ مهدي. إنه المعلم الذي يساعد في الحديقة.

3 مبنى تكنولوجيا المعلومات

هذا هو المبنى الذي يمكنك العثور فيه على فصول الكمبيوتر الخاصة بنا. يأتي الطلاب إلى هنا لأخذ دروس تكنولوجيا المعلومات الخاصة بهم. لدينا أكثر من 50 جهاز كمبيوتر مكتبي، بالإضافة إلى أجهزة كمبيوتر محمولة وأجهزة لوحية يمكن للطلاب استعارتها.

4 صالة 2024 الرياضية

المبنى الأصفر هو الصالة الرياضية الجديدة الخاصة بنا. نستخدمها في كرة السلة وكرة اليد وتمارين الجمباز أثناء دروس التربية البدنية. هناك بعض المعلمين الذين يديرون نوادي رياضية مدرسية هنا أيضًا، مثل كرة القدم الخماسية (الأستاذ عفيفي، قسم الرياضيات) والتنس (الأستاذة منال، قسم اللغة الفرنسية).





Listening Script

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series ❶ which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it takes place ❷ in the future on a planet ❸ called Wanda. This is a world where humans ❹ live because the Earth is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return ❺ to Earth to look for ❻ his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring ❼. He doesn't have many friends, but he thinks perhaps his family is still alive ❽, so he decides to hide ❾ on a spaceship ❿ which is travelling to Earth. The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them. I'm excited ⓫ to see what happens next!

1. مسلسل تليفزيوني
2. تدور أحداثه
3. على كوكب
4. البشر
5. يعود - يرجع
6. يبحث عن
7. مملة
8. لا تزال على قيد الحياة
9. يختبئ
10. سفينة فضاء
11. متحمس

GRAMMAR STUDY

who - which (الذي - التي - الذين - اللائي)

where حيث

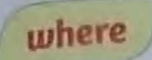
- **We use who, which, and where to give more information about a particular person, thing, or place. We use these words for both singular and plural nouns.**
- **Remember when we use who, which, or where, we don't need to repeat the subject of the sentence.**

who ▶▶▶ used to talk about people. تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول عاقل.

- Mr Sergany is the teacher. He runs the football club.
  - ▶ Mr Sergany is the teacher who runs the football club.

which ▶▶▶ used to talk about things. تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول غير عاقل.

- These are the shoes. I wear them to school.
  - ▶ These are the shoes which I wear to school.



where ▶▶▶ used to talk about places. تُستخدم لوصف أو تعريف مكان.

○ This is the building. We do physical education in it.

▶ This is the building where we do physical education.

(ed) adjectives & (ing) adjectives

frightened (adj) خائف

■ **We use (-ed) adjectives to describe how a person feels.**

■ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed) تُستخدم لوصف شعور شخص ما (في الغالب تُستخدم لوصف عاقل).

▶ I am excited!

▶ She is interested in science.

frightening (adj) مخيف

■ **We use (-ing) adjectives to describe people or things that give us feelings.**

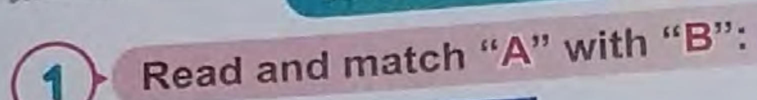
■ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) تُستخدم لوصف الشيء الذي جعل الشخص يشعر بشعورٍ ما (في الغالب تستخدم لوصف غير العاقل).

▶ The football game is exciting.

▶ This TV show is really interesting.

✦ نفس الأمر ينطبق على الصفات الآتية:

"ed" adjectives		"ing" adjectives	
bored	شاعر بالملل	boring	مُمِل
frightened	خائف	frightening	مخيف
tired	مُتعَب	tiring	مُتعِب
worried	قلِق - قلقان	worrying	مُقلِق
excited	سعيد - متحمس	exciting	مثير
surprised	متفاجئ	surprising	مُفاجِئ
interested	مهتم	interesting	ممتع - شيِّق - مُشوِّق
amazed	مندهش	amazing	مُدهِش



Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. This is the place where students	a) students have break.
2. These laboratories have all the equipment which	b) students can borrow.
3. This is a large open area where	c) study science.
4. He is the teacher who	d) run after-school sports clubs here too.
5. This is the building where	e) you can find our new computer classrooms.
6. We have laptops and tablets which	f) helps in the garden.
7. There are some teachers who	g) students need to do experiment

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the b

study - school - open area - equipment - lessons

Evan : Good Morning, Clara!

Clara : Good Morning, Evan.

Evan : Do you want to see my ① ....?

Clara : Of course, that will be so much fun.

Evan : Let me show you the classrooms and our laboratories.

Clara : What do you ② .... in these laboratories?

Evan : We study science there; we have all the ③ ....

classes need to do experiments.

Clara : Wow! That's awesome.

Evan : We also have a large ④ .... where we enjoy our

Clara : Great! Your school is amazing, Evan. I love it!



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fountain - fields - area - benches - break

This is the West Court. It is a large open ① .... where students have ② .... There is a playground and playing field. There are also ③ .... to sit on under the trees and a water ④ .... if you feel thirsty. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

4 Choose the correct answer: who - which - where

1. Dalia is the girl (which - who - where) sits next to me in the English class.
2. An ostrich is a big bird (which - who - where) can't fly.
3. This is the street (which - who - where) my uncle lives.
4. I really love the red flowers (which - who - where) grow in our garden.
5. The supermarket is the place (which - who - where) we buy food.
6. Hany is a boy in my class (which - who - where) has a pet lizard.
7. These are the computers (which - who - where) we use for our projects.
8. Bees are the insects (which - who - where) make honey.
9. A pharmacy is a shop (which - who - where) you can buy medicine.
10. That is another classroom (which - who - where) we have science lessons.
11. Leila is the tall girl (which - who - where) has red hair.
12. This is a new video game (which - who - where) is very popular with young children.

5 Choose the correct answer: (ed) & (ing) adjectives

1. Hi Fareeda, I'm (surprised - surprising) to see you!
2. The results of the students' last test are (surprised - surprising).
3. The children feel (bored - boring) when there is nothing to do.
4. He is (bored - boring) with his work. He wants to change it.
5. His birthday party was (excited - exciting).
6. They were (excited - exciting) on watching the match.

7. I'm really (interested - interesting) in Ancient Egypt.
8. The history of Ancient Egypt is really (interested - interesting).
9. My dad was really (tired - tiring) last night.
10. My dad's work is very (tired - tiring).

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. modern - We - are - our - proud of - buildings.
▶ ....
2. is - This - a large - area - open.
▶ ....
3. do - study - you - Arabic - Where?
▶ .... ?
4. to - surprised - see - you - I'm!
▶ .... !
5. in - She - interested - science - is.
▶ ....
6. loves - using - all the - laptops - time - He.
▶ ....
7. English - my - school - favorite - subject - is.
▶ ....
8. math - your - is - Who - teacher?
▶ .... ?

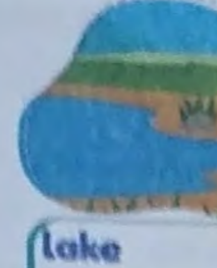
7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. kareem is a clever boy
▶ ....
2. do you like your school amgad
▶ ....
3. who is your math teacher
▶ ....
4. my parents take me to the park every friday
▶ ....
5. when does manal wake up for school
▶ ....

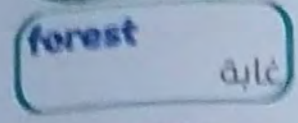
Lesson  3 Reading & Pronunciation & Math

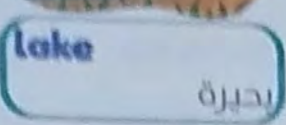
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

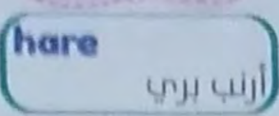


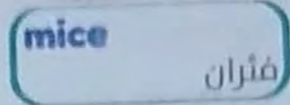









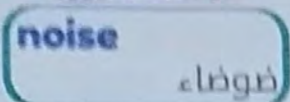









stomach
معدة



loud voice
صوت عالٍ

brave
شجاع

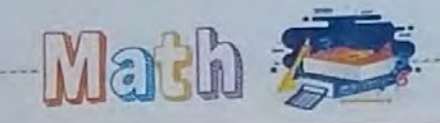
Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Characters of the Story

Hare	الأرنب البري	Elephant	الفيل
Monkey	القرد	Mouse	الفأر

Prepositions

run back home	تجري عائدة لمنزلها	come in	يدخل
run out	يخرج راكضًا	look at	ينظر إلى
run away	يفر - يهرب	afraid of	خائف من
get to	يصل إلى	scared of	مرتعب من
go back	يعود - يرجع	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة



Estimating Numbers

calculate	يحسب	**approximate number**	عدد تقريبي
measure	يقيس	**decimal number**	عدد عشري
measurements	قياسات	**whole number**	عدد صحيح - رقم صحيح
estimate	يُقَدِّر - يُخَمِّن - يُقَيِّم	**round up**	يُقرِّب للرقم الأكبر
multiply	يضرب (حسابيًا)	**round down**	يُقرِّب للرقم الأصغر

When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an approximate number. We can round decimal numbers up or down to the nearest whole number: **2.66 → 3.00** **3.95 → 4.00**

عندما لا نحتاج إلى أن نحسب بدقة، فإننا نُقدِّر رقمًا تقريبيًا. يمكننا تقريب الأعداد العشرية للأكبر أو للأصغر لأقرب رقم صحيح:

2.66 → 3.00 **3.95 → 4.00**

Remember **تذكر**

▶ If the digit in the tenths is 5 or more, then we'll round up to the nearest whole number:

◀ لو كان الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية (**5**) فما فوق، نقوم بتقريب الرقم العشري إلى الرقم الصحيح الأكبر.

13.95 becomes 14.

▶ If the digit in the tenths is less than 5, then we round down to the nearest whole number:

◀ لو كان الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية أقل من (**5**)، نقوم بتقريب الرقم العشري إلى الرقم الصحيح الأصغر.

134.3 becomes 134.

Pronunciation

/ʌ/		/æ/	
cut (v)	يقص	cat	قطة
truck	شاحنة	track	مسار - طريق
hut	كوخ	hat	قبعة
bug	حشرة	bag	شنطة
stuck (adj)	عالق	stack (n)	كومة
uncle	عم - خال	ankle	كاحل
hungry	جائع	animal	حيوان
funny	مُضحك	angry	غاضب
nuts	مكسرات	happy	سعيد
duck	بطة	has (v)	لديه - عنده
brush (n)	فرشاة	Harry	هاري (اسم)
stomach	مَعِدَة	and	و (أداة العطف)
come (v)	يأتي	a	أداة تنكير
some	بعض	an	أداة تنكير
honey	عسل	mat	سجادة - بِساط

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
remember	يتذكَّر	remembered
stay	يبقى - يظل	stayed
shout	يصيح	shouted
open	يفتح	opened

Present		Past
laugh	يضحك	laughed
look	ينظر	looked
live	يعيش	lived
move	يتحرك	moved

Present		Past
jump	يقفز	jumped
start	يبدأ	started
love	يحب	loved
cry	يبكي	cried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

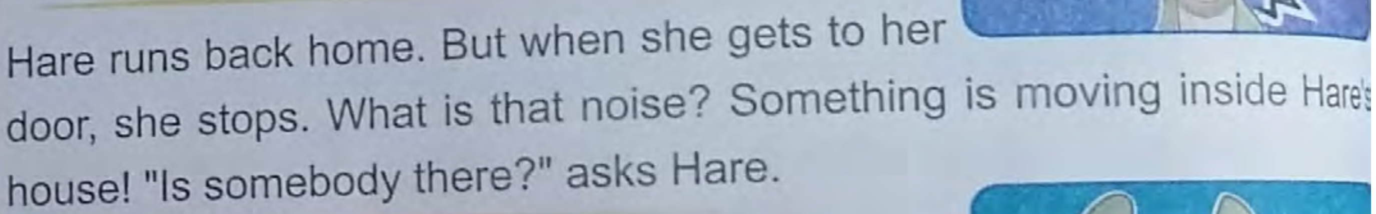
Present		Past
make	يصنع - يجعل	made
run back	يجري عائدًا	ran back
come in	يدخل	came in
go back	يعود	went back
write down	يُدَوِّن	wrote down
get to	يصل إلى	got to
speak	يتحدث	spoke
see	يرى	saw
tell	يُخْبِر	told
think	يُفَكِّر	thought



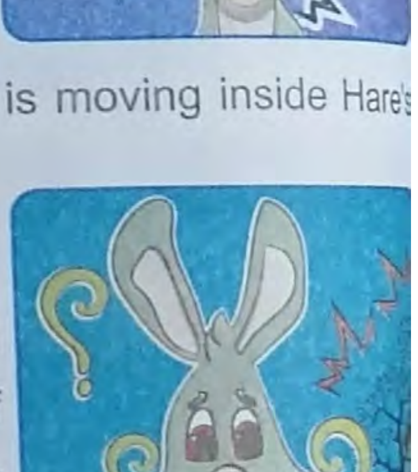
Read and learn

Who is in Hare's house?

It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. Suddenly, her stomach makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's hungry!



Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops. What is that noise? Something is moving inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asks Hare.



"Stay where you are!" says a loud voice. Hare is very surprised. Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite food."

Hare is very scared. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend Monkey lives.
"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare. "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"

Monkey looks interested. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.
They go back to Hare's house. "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey.
A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in. Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also delicious."



Monkey and Hare look at each other. They are both very scared. They run to the lake where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!"

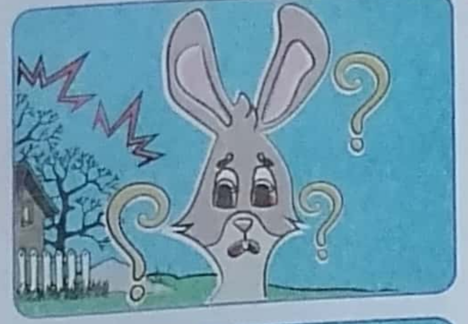
"Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody can eat me!"
Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.
"Stop!" says the animal inside. "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."
"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest..."
Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice!

"Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries Elephant and he quickly runs away.



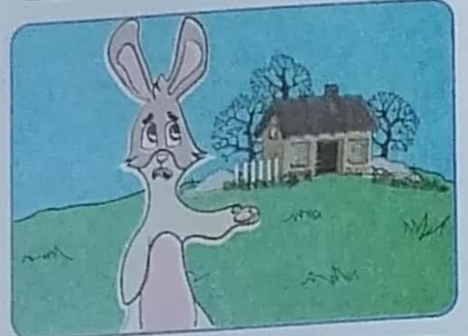
Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry," she says. "Are you angry?"
Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say. "Elephant's face was so funny!"
They all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.

مَن في منزل الأرنبة البريّة؟



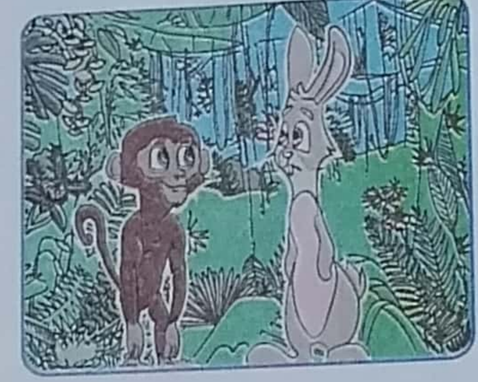
إنه يوم مشمس، والأرنبة البريّة مستلقية على العشب. وفجأة تُصْدِر بطنها صوتًا عاليًا. تتذكر الأرنبة البريّة الجَزَر الموجود في مطبخها. إنها جائعة!

تجري الأرنبة البريّة عائدة إلى منزلها. لكن عندما تصل إلى بابها، تتوقف. ما هذه الضوضاء؟ شيء ما يتحرك داخل منزلها! تسأل الأرنبة البريّة قائلة: "هل يوجد أحدٌ في الداخل؟"



يردّ صوت مرتفع من الداخل قائلًا: "ابقَيْ حيث أنتِ!"

الأرنبة البريّة مندهشة للغاية. مَن الموجود في بيتها؟ ثم يتكلم الصوت مرة أخرى. "أيتها الأرنبة البريّة، لا تدخلي. إذا دخلتِ، سوف آكلكِ. فالأرانب البرية هي طعامي المفضل."



الأرنبة البريّة خائفة جدًا. الحيوان الذي في بيتها يريد أن يأكلها. تجري الأرنبة البريّة إلى الغابة حيث يعيش صديقها الذكيّ القرد.

تقول الأرنبة البريّة: "أيها القرد، ساعدني من فضلك! هناك حيوان في منزلي، وهو يريد أن يأكلني!"

يبدو القرد مهتمًا، ويقول: "حيوان؟ دعينا نذهب ونرى."

يعودان إلى منزل الأرنبة البريّة. يصيح القرد قائلًا: "من هناك؟"

يرد صوت قائلًا: "أيها القرد، لا تدخل. سآكلك إن دخلت. الأرانب البرية هي طعامي المفضل، لكن القرود لذيذة أيضًا."

ينظر القرد والأرنبة البريّة إلى بعضهما. كلاهما خائفان جدًا. ويركضان إلى البحيرة حيث يعيش صديقهما الفيل. يقولان للفيل: "هناك حيوان يأكل الأرانب البرية والقردة في منزل الأرنبة البريّة. نحن نحتاج مساعدتك!"

يقول الفيل: "لا تقلقا! أنا قادم! أنا أضخم وأقوى وأشجع حيوان في العالم. لا أحد يستطيع أن يأكلني!"

يذهب الفيل إلى منزل الأرنبة البريّة، ويصيح قائلًا: "سأدخل".

يقول الحيوان الذي بالداخل: "توقف! أنا جائع وأنا أحب أن آكل ..."

يصيح الفيل قائلًا: "لا يمكنك أن تأكلني! أنا أضخم وأقوى ..."



فجاة، يفتح باب الأرنبة البريّة، وتخرج منه فأرة صغيرة راكضة.
يقفز الفيل عاليًا في الهواء! إنه خائف جدًا. فكما يعلم الجميع، الفيلة تخاف من الفئران!

صرخ الفيل وهو يهرب بسرعة: "ساعداني! فأرة! فأرة!"
تنظر الفأرة إلى الأرنبة البريّة والقرد، وتقول: "أنا آسفة. هل أنتما غاضبان؟"
تبدأ الأرنبة البريّة والقرد في الضحك. ويقولان: "لا، لسنا غاضبَيْن. وجه الفيل كان مضحكًا جدًا!"
يضحك الجميع مرة أخرى. ثم تذهب الأرنبة البريّة إلى الداخل لتأكل جَزَرَها أخيرًا.

Tip!

When characters speak in stories, we show it with punctuation called quotation marks:

"Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!"

We put quotation marks before and after the sentence.

We use verbs like say, shout, and ask to say who is speaking.

"Is somebody there?" **asked** Monkey.

"No, we are not angry," **said** Hare and Monkey.

عندما تتحدث الشخصيات في القصص، نُبَيِّن ذلك بعلامة ترقيم تُسمّى علامات التنصيص:

"Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!"

نضع علامة التنصيص قبل وبعد الجملة.

ونستخدم أفعال مثل (say - shout - ask) لنقول مَن المتحدث.

"Is somebody there?" **asked** Monkey.

"No, we are not angry," **said** Hare and Monkey.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and write the following words in the correct column:

cut - track - truck - hungry - hat - funny - angry - happy - nuts - bag - duck - brush - mat - animal

/æ/	/ʌ/
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....

2 Round the following numbers to the nearest whole number:

① 2.03 → ....
② 12.96 → ....
③ 1.11 → ....
④ 4.71 → ....
⑤ 24.56 → ....
⑥ 19.39 → ....
⑦ 8.09 → ....
⑧ 41.65 → ....
⑨ 31.68 → ....
⑩ 87.24 → ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculates how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need. Each can covers 22 square meters, so the students need 2 cans (44 square meters) to cover 42 square meters. They will have at least 20 liters left over.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Each can covers (44 - 42 - 22) square meters.
2. The opposite of the word "much" is (a little - more - many - a few).

B Answer these questions:

3. How much paint does the class need to paint the walls?

▶ ....

4. How many liters of paint will they have left over?

▶ ....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. weather - The - is - today - sunny.

▶ ....

2. Something - moving - the - is - house - inside.

▶ ....

3. is - the - inside - house - Who?

▶ ....?

4. runs - the - to - Hare - forest.

▶ ....

5. my - an - There's - in - animal - house.

▶ ....

6. Elephants - mice - afraid - are - of!

▶ ....!

7. her - hears - inside - a noise - house - Hare.

▶ ....

5 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"An interesting story I read"

▸ Ideas to help you:

- What's this story?
- When did you read it?
- Who are the characters?
- What or who do you like best in the story?

....

....

....

....

Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



cat قطة



bird طائر

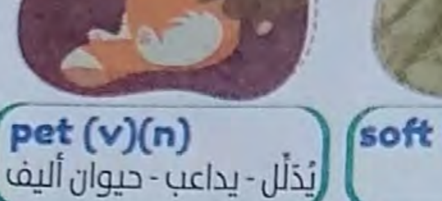


lizard سحلية



fish مكة





pet (v)(n) يُدلّل - يداعب - حيوان أليف

soft fur فرو ناعم



sharp claws مخالب حادة



keep ي (حيوانات)



independent مستقل - معتمد على ذاته



well-being سعادة - سلامة نفسية



positive points نقاط إيجابية



negative point اط سلبية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
touch	يلمس	touched
need	يحتاج	needed
walk	يمشي	walked

Present		Past
include	يشمل - يتضمن	included
use	يستخدم	used
like	يُحب	liked



Read and learn



Cats Are the Best Pets



Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.

القطط هي أفضل الحيوانات الأليفه

القطط هي حيواني المفضل، وأعتقد أنها أفضل الحيوانات الأليفه. إنها جميلة ولها فرو ناعم لطيف الملمس. إنها حيوانات نظيفة وهادئة، وعادةً ما تكون ودودة. وهي تحب البشر ولكنها حيوانات مستقلة، لذلك لا يلزم أخذها في نزهة يوميًا. صحيح أن القطط لديها مخالب وأسنان حادة، لكنها لا تستخدمها إلا عندما تكون خائفة. يقول الناس أيضًا أنه عندما تداعب قطة، فهذا يجعلك سعيدًا. لذا فالقطط مفيدة لراحتك النفسية أيضًا.



GRAMMAR STUDY

but لكن

- **You can use "but" to join two contrasting ideas in a sentence. For example, you can mention a negative point, then use but to explain why it's not really a problem.**

- يمكنك استخدام "لكن" للربط بين فكرتين متناقضتين في جملة.

على سبيل المثال، يمكنك ذكر نقطة سلبية، ثم استخدام "لكن" لشرح سبب عدم كونها مشكلة.

but ▶▶▶▶▶▶▶▶▶▶▶▶▶▶ تُستخدم لربط جملتين يعبران عن التناقض.

- It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

soft - walk - friendly - eat - pets

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best ① ....
They are beautiful, with ② .... fur which is nice to touch.
They are clean and calm animals and are usually ③ ....
They like people, but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a ④ .... every day.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Cats are my favorite animals and I think they are the best (pets - insects - toys).
2. Cats have (soft - sharp - hard) fur which is nice to touch.
3. Cats are (noisy - independent - tiring). You don't need to take them for a walk every day.
4. Cats have (dull - sharp - blunt) claws and teeth. Don't make them angry.
5. People say that when you (pet - eat - kick) a cat, this makes you and the cat happy.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. are - favorite - my - animals - Cats.
▶ ....
2. are - pets - Fish - best - the.
▶ ....
3. fur - Soft - is - to - nice - touch.
▶ ....
4. I - keep - pet - love to - clean - my.
▶ ....
5. claws - have - Cats - sharp - and teeth.
▶ ....
6. favorite - writes - Hany - about - pet - his.
▶ ....

7. Dogs - pets - are - friendly - very.

▶ ....

8. love to - do - people - pets - keep - Why?

▶ .... ?

9. want - the - to - We - beach - go to.

▶ ....

10. polite - is - and - Dalia - clever.

▶ ....

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. this is arwa s lovely pet

▶ ....

2. no we don t need to go to the school on saturday

▶ ....

3. mohamed salah is a famous footballer

▶ ....

4. what s your favorite animal

▶ ....

5. those aren t my shoes

▶ ....

5 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"My favorite pet"

Ideas to help you:

- What is it?
- What does it eat?
- Where does it sleep?
- How do you pet it?
- What are the positive and negative points of having a pet?

....

....

....

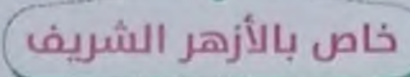
....

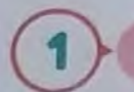
....

....

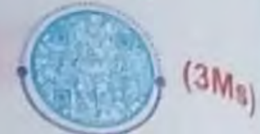
Test 3 on Unit 2







1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



(3Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. The west court is the large open area (who - which - where - when) students spend time outside.
2. There are also (chairs - seats - benches - desks) to sit on under the trees.
3. Children can also grow (trees - flowers - seeds - plants) with Mr Mahdi.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3Ms)

afraid - brave - interested - interesting

Radwa : Did you like the story of Hare?

Amany : Yes. I think it's ① ....

Radwa : Why was Hare ② ....?

Amany : Because there was an animal in her kitchen, and it wanted to eat her.

Radwa : Which character did you like best?

Amany : I liked Elephant. He's ③ ...., but he's very funny. He made me laugh.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. The fridge is a place (which - where - who - when) we keep our foods and drinks.
2. Dad bought me a new mobile. This was (surprised - surprising - excited - bored).
3. Hagar is a girl in my class (which - where - who - when) is polite and clever.
4. He wants to go out with his friends, (and - so - because - but) he has a lot of homework.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Hello! My name is Amr. Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the word 'sharp' is (soft - hard - ugly).
2. Cats are beautiful with soft (eyes - teeth - fur).

B Answer these questions:

3. Why does Amr like cats? ▶ ....
4. When do cats use their sharp claws and teeth? ▶ ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. Hazem - How - feel - does - today? ▶ .... ?
2. like - you - do - school - Which - subjects? ▶ .... ?
3. new - My - school - great - is. ▶ ....

6 Punctuate the following sentence: (1Ms)

- yes we are going to the zoo on thursday ▶ ....

7 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Yousef: (5Ms)

"My school"

▶ Ideas to help you:
like - meet - friends - big - classrooms - laboratories - gymnasium - open area - playing fields

....

....

....

Test ④ on Unit ②

Total 30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. The IT Building is the building where you can find our (TV - radio - computer - mobile) classrooms.
2. Students come here for their information (Science - English - Math - Technology) lessons.
3. We have over (40 - 50 - 60 - 70) computers.

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. The Ahmed Zewail Building is the place where students study ....
2. There are four classrooms and two new ....
3. There's all the equipment which classes need to do ....

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. This is the boy (which - who - where) becomes my new neighbor.
2. The park is a place (which - who - where) he flies his kite.
3. They are (interesting - surprised - interested) in doing experiments.
4. These are the vegetables (where - which - who) my mom bought today.

4 Read and match "A" with "B": (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. What is the weather like in July?	a) A small mouse.
2. My dad likes his work,	b) 4.
3. We can round the number 4.32 to	c) all the equipment.
4. Who is in Hare's house?	d) 5.
5. These laboratories have	e) but it's very tiring.
	f) It's very hot.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Some people like to keep pets at their homes. If you are one of those, you should choose one that is right for your family and your home. If you live in a house with a garden, then a dog would be a good pet for you. Dogs need

the garden for exercise. Dogs are very good guards. The dog is well known for loving its owner.
Cats live happily in flats. An aquarium full of fish is fun to watch. There are many different types of fish that live happily together. Remember that they need plants to make oxygen, and the aquarium always needs to be clean.
Whatever pet you choose, you should love and care for it. You have to feed it. Your pet will love you in return.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. (Two - Three - Four - Five) types of pets are mentioned in the passage.
2. The underlined word "well known" means (angry - naughty - famous - sharp).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?
4. What should you do for your pet?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (4Ms)

1. shoes - These - the - are - I - wear - which - to school. ▶ ....
2. does - Amr - What - like? ▶ .... ?
3. Mr Mahdi - with - Children - grow - can - plants. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- what s the weather like in egypt in january ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Hagar: (5Ms)

Tell her about your school rooms, and what you do in every room. Tell her also about the school open areas and playgrounds, and where you spend your break, and what you do then. Your email address is sarah@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is hagar@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....

................,
....


Unit 3
Vacation plans
خُطَط الإجازة
In this unit I will ....
listen, read, research, and write about making vacation plans.
talk about facts using clauses with if or when.
talk about when somethi g happens using prepositions of time.
read and listen to determine the central message.
practice saying the initial consonant sounds /w/ and /v/.
write a blog about a place you like visiting.
research and make a brochure about a vacation destination.



Lesson 1 Let's go quad biking on Tuesday

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





vacation
إجازة - عطلة



quad biking
ركوب دراجات رباعية (ذات أربعة إطارات)



hotel
فندق



explore the souks
نستكشف الأسواق

take photos
نلتقط صور



rollercoaster
قطار الملاهي

Places

Cairo	القاهرة	**Manial Palace Museum**	متحف قصر المنيل
Giza	الجيزة	**Bab Zuweila minaret**	مئذنة باب زويلة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

view	مَنْظَر - مشهد - إطلالة	**sunset**	غروب الشمس
top	قِمة	**the theme park**	مدينة الملاهي
look interesting	يبدو ممتعًا	**Cool!**	رائع!

Prepositions

excited about	متحمس لِ - متحمس بشأن	on Sunday	في يوم الأحد
come back	يعود - يرجع	on Wednesday	في يوم الأربعاء
in about 30 minutes	في غضون 30 دقيقة	in the morning	في الصباح

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

When you see it from the air, the Nile valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between desert cliffs, it is narrow.

عندما تراه من الجو، يكون وادي النيل على شكل مروحة. في الشمال، حيث يتسع وادي النيل ليشمل الدلتا، فهو يكون واسعًا. وفي الجنوب، حيث يمر وادي النيل بين المنحدرات الصحراوية، فهو يكون ضيقًا.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited	want	يُريد	wanted
watch	يشاهد	watched	plan	يُخَطِّط	planned
look	يبدو - انظر	looked	love	يحب	loved
ask	يسأل - يطلب	asked	arrive	يصل	arrived
climb	يتسلق	climbed	explore	يستكشف	explored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose
go	يذهب	went
get	يحصل على	got
leave	يغادر - يترك	left
take	يأخذ	took

Present		Past
ride	يركب	rode
eat	يأكل	ate
do	يفعل	did
come	يأتي	came
say	يقول	said

Read and learn

An exciting vacation

Samer : I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel.

Basel : Me too! Why don't we try new places? We can travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

Samer : Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

Basel : Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museums. Let's also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!

Samer : Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

Basel : Like what?

Samer : We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

Basel : Great! We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening.

Samer : Yes. What else can we do?

Basel : Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

Samer : Cool! And in the morning, we can explore the Souks! They're near the Minaret.

Basel : Great! Cairo here we come!



إجازة ممتعة

سامر : أنا متحمس لعُطْلَتِنا هذا الأسبوع يا باسل.

باسل : وأنا أيضًا! لمَ لا نُجرِّب زيارة أماكن جديدة؟ يمكننا الذهاب إلى القاهرة، فهناك العديد من الأشياء التي يمكن رؤيتها هناك.

سامر : نعم. يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل أولًا. إذا ذهبنا إلى المتحف يوم الأحد، يمكننا التقاط صور يوم الاثنين من أجل مشروعي المدرسي.

باسل : حسنًا، هذا رائع! يمكن لأمي أن تذهب معنا، فهي تحب المتاحف. دعنا نذهب أيضًا إلى مدينة الملاهي ونركب قطار الملاهي!

سامر : حسنًا! لنفعل ذلك يوم الثلاثاء. هناك أيضًا بعض الأماكن التي تبدو مُشوِّقة خارج القاهرة.

باسل : مثل ماذا؟

سامر : يمكننا أن نذهب لركوب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء في الجيزة. إذا استقللنا الحافلة سنَصِلُ في حوالي 30 دقيقة.

Lesson 1



باسل : رائع! يمكننا الذهاب باكرًا يوم الأربعاء والعودة للفندق قبل المساء.

سامر : أجل. ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل غير ذلك؟

باسل : دعنا نتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة يوم الخميس. إن تسلُّقها صعب، لكن المنظر من الأعلى جميل للغاية. إذا ذهبنا إلى هناك آخر النهار، يمكننا مشاهدة غروب الشمس على المدينة.

سامر : رائع! وفي الصباح يمكننا استكشاف الأسواق! إنها قريبة من المئذنة.

باسل : عظيم! ها نحن قادمون أيتها القاهرة!

The lesson notes

Making suggestions

We can make suggestions by using:

يمكن اقتراح شيء ما بعدة طُرق منها:

Let's ... →	المصدر +	هيا بنا
Why don't ...? →	المصدر +	لما لا
Should we...? →	المصدر +	هل ينبغي علينا أن / هل يجب أن

- Let's go to the theme park.
- Why don't we try new places?
- Should we explore the souks?

عند الموافقة على الاقتراح يمكن استخدام تعبيرات مختلفة مثل:

Okay, cool!	حسنًا، رائع!	Great!	رائع!
Okay.	حسنًا.	Good idea!	فكرة جيدة!

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. Let's go to the theme park.	a) About 30 minutes.
2. You can go quad	b) Okay, cool!
3. How long does it take?	c) The view from the top is beautiful.
4. There are also some places outside Cairo	d) What else do you want?
5. Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret.	e) biking in the desert!
	f) that look interesting.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

ride – Museum – biking – places – photos

Samer : I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel.

Basel : Me too! Why don't we try new ① ....? We can travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

Samer : Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace ② .... first.

Basel : Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museums. Let's also go to the theme park and ③ .... on a rollercoaster!

Samer : Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

Basel : Like what?

Samer : We can go quad ④ .... in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

Basel : Great! We can go early and come back to the hotel before evening.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Let's (visited - visits - visit) the Manial Palace Museum.
2. We can (explore - take - choose) the Souks.
3. Why don't we (try - tries - tried) new places?
4. You can go (swimming - diving - quad biking) in the desert!
5. Let's go there and (ride - drive - climb) on a rollercoaster.
6. In the late afternoon, we can watch the (sunset - sunrise - moon light) over the city.
7. Let's (arrive - walk - climb) the Bab Zuweila minaret.
8. I choose what to do (at - in - on) Thursday.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. excited - vacation - I'm - about - our.

▶ ....

2. places - new - don't - try - Why - we?

▶ .... ?

3. Manial Palace - We - the - can - visit - Museum.

▶ ....

4. beautiful - The - is - from - view - the top.

▶ ....

5. can - We - in the desert - quad biking - go.

▶ ....

6. in - We - about 30 minutes - will - arrive.

▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. should we explore the souks on monday
   ▶ ....
2. are there interesting places in cairo
   ▶ ....
3. let s go to sharm el-sheikh on monday
   ▶ ....
4. do you enjoy your vacation
   ▶ ....
5. no i can t go to giza by bike
   ▶ ....
6. why don't we visit the egyptian museum on thursday
   ▶ ....

6 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Mustafa:

Tell him about your vacation, the new places you visit, and how you enjoy your time. Your email address is amir@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is mustafa@school.net.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....;

....
....
....
....
..................,
....

Lesson 2 If we book the tour today, it's cheaper

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



regular breaks فترات راحة منتظمة



company شركة



discount (n) خَصم



book (v) يحجِز



tour جولة (سياحية)



bank details تفاصيل بنكية



guide مُرشِد



trip رحلة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

less time	وقت أقل	**credit card**	بطاقة ائتمان
more time	وقت أطول	**study time**	وقت المذاكرة
problem	مشكلة	**row**	صف
dictionary	قاموس	**feel proud**	يشعر بالفخر
properly	بصورة صحيحة - كما ينبغي - بشكل مناسب	**social media**	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
cheaper	أرخص	**dust**	غبار
tips	نصائح	**stomach ache**	مغص (ألم بالمعدة)

Prepositions

pay for	يدفع مقابل	**at the same time**	في نفس الوقت
listen to	يستمع إلى	**at the end**	في النهاية

get up	ينهض - يستيقظ	at home	في البيت
look up	يبحث عن (كلمة في قاموس)	switch off	يُطفئ (جهاز - النور)
turn it down	يخفض الصوت	talk about	يتحدث عن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
book	يحجز	booked
switch on	يُشغّل	switched on
switch off	يُطفئ	switched off
turn on	يُشغّل	turned on
water	يسقي - يروي	watered
press	يضغط	pressed
heat	يُسخّن	heated
melt	يُذيب	melted
last	يستمر	lasted
finish	يُنهي	finished
remember	يتذكر	remembered

Present		Past
check off	يضع علامة على شيء في قائمة (بعد إتمامه)	checked off
block	يمنع - يسدّ	blocked
happen	يحدث	happened
prefer	يُفضّل - يُحَبّذ	preferred
plan	يُخَطّط	planned
travel	يسافر	traveled
study	يذاكر	studied
try	يُجَرّب	tried
die	يموت	died
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
concentrate	يُرَكّز	concentrated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
cost	يُكَلّف	cost
mean	يعني - يقصد	meant
pay	يدفع	paid
sit	يجلس	sat
choose	يختار	chose
find	يجد	found
get better	يتحسّن	got better
tell	يُخْبِر	told

Present		Past
catch	يُمسِك	caught
eat	يأكل	ate
meet	يقابل	met
get up	ينهض - يستيقظ	got up
know	يعرف	knew
write	يكتب	wrote
give	يعطي	gave
feel	يشعر	felt

Lesson 2

GRAMMAR STUDY

The Zero Conditional (If)
حالة (If) الصفرية



If	إذا / لو	When	عندما

If (When) + present simple ▶▶▶ present simple / (can) + inf

If (When) + مضارع بسيط ▶▶▶ المصدر + (can) / مضارع بسيط

■ **We use clauses with "if" or "when" + present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can", to talk about facts or things that are usually true.**

■ تُستخدم حالة (If) الصفرية أو (When) للتعبير عن حقائق أو أشياء تكون صحيحةً عادةً.

- If we go by bus, it is quicker.
- When you go there in the afternoon, you can watch the sunset.

■ **The clause with (if/when) can come at the start of the sentence, or at the end. When it comes first, we separate the two clauses with a comma.**

■ يمكن أن نستخدم (If) أو (When) في بداية الجملة أو بين العبارتين، ولكن عندما نبدأ الجملة بـ (If) أو (When) نضع فاصلة (,) بين العبارتين.

- If you press the button, the tablet switches off.
- The tablet switches off if you press this button.

■ **In questions, the clause with if/when usually comes at the end.**

■ عند صياغة سؤال، عادةً ما تُستخدم (If) أو (When) بين العبارتين.

- How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?
- Does your aunt always cook feteer when you visit her?

Prepositions of time

in	on	at
in the morning	on Friday (days)	at six o'clock (hours)
in the afternoon	on Saturday	at nine thirty
in the evening	on Sunday	at half past two
in October (months)	on school days	at eleven twenty
in September	on the weekend	at night
in summer (seasons)	on my birthday	at midnight
in winter	on April 17th (dates)	at midday
in 2019 (years)	on the17th of April	at lunchtime

لاحظ أن: نستخدم حرف الجر (in) قبل الشهور، ولكن إن قصدنا يومًا محددًا في الشهر نستخدم حرف الجر (on).

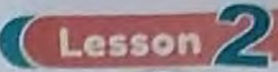


Study tips

Study for about 30 minutes, but no longer. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's brains work better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't study when you are hungry! If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can work better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you write down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!

نصائح للدراسة

ذاكر لمدة 30 دقيقة ليس أكثر. إذا حاولت الدراسة لساعات بدون استراحة، فلا يمكنك التركيز. عندما تأخذ فترات راحة منتظمة، فإنك تتذكر أكثر. من الأفضل أيضًا أن تذاكر في نفس الوقت كل يوم، حتى في أيام الجمعة والسبت. تعمل عقول الناس بشكل أفضل إذا كان لديهم روتين منتظم. أيضًا، لا تذاكر عندما تكون جائعًا! إذا قمت بتناول وجبة صحية في وقت الغداء يمكنك أن تعمل بشكل أفضل في وقت الظهيرة. من المفيد أن تقوم بتدوين قائمة عما تريد القيام به في كل مرة تذاكر فيها. ثم يمكنك حذفه من القائمة عند الانتهاء منه وتشعر بالفخر!





Listening Script

Samer : Dad, here's the information ❶ I found online ❷ about quad biking in the desert.

Dad : Oh, thanks Samer. Show me.

Samer : The company is called Desert Adventures ❸. When you look at their website, the information is here. Look. The tour guide will meet us at the hotel.

Dad : OK. What time will he meet us?

Samer : He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.

Dad : And what time do we get back?

Samer : We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is included in the price ❹. Should we take some water?

Dad : Yes. Good idea. How big is the group?

Samer : It'll be a group of six.

Dad : I like the photos. Everyone is wearing helmets ❺. That's good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike ❻. How long do we ride the quad bikes for?

Samer : One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?

Dad : Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Remember to listen to the guide's instructions ❼ so that you stay safe ❽.

Samer : Yes, I will Dad.

Dad : Good! How do we book the tour ❾ if we can't book it on the website?

Samer : We can book it at the office ❿ in town. If we book the tour today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount.

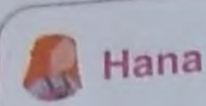
Dad : Great. Can you pass me my wallet? I need my credit card to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now.

Samer : Sure Dad. Here you are.

❶ معلومات
❷ عبر الإنترنت
❸ مغامرات صحراوية (اسم شركة)
❹ السعر
❺ خُوذات - خُوَذ
❻ دراجة رباعية
❼ إرشادات المرشد
❽ تبقى آمنًا
❾ الجولة - الرحلة
❿ مكتب الشركة



Listing Script



Hana : Hi. My name's Hana. I get up every day at 6 o'clock. I have breakfast with my family at 6.30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday. I do homework on Tuesday.

Youssef : Hi. I'm Youssef. I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7.30 in the morning. I don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday. I do homework on Thursday.

Maggie : Hello. My name's Maggie. I get up every day at 6.30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports. I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.

Nader : Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8.15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

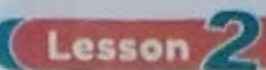
Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

finish - have - concentrate - try - work

Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. If you ① .... to study for hours and hours, you can't concentrate. When you ② .... regular breaks, you ③ .... more. It's also better to study at the same time each day. People's brains ④ .... better if they have a regular routine.



2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

check - eat - finish - write - remember

Don't study when you're hungry! If you ① .... a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can ② .... better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you ③ .... down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can ④ .... it off the list when you ⑤ .... studying and feel proud!

3 Read and complete the mini-dialogues with the words in the box:

pencils - door - dictionary - activities - social media

1. **Hazem** : Mom, there's a problem with the freezer. It isn't working.
   Mom : The freezer doesn't work if you don't close the .... properly.

2. **Leila** : Mrs. Manal, can we use.................... in the test?
   Teacher: No, sorry, you can't. Tell me now if you don't have a blue pen.

3. **Karim** : What does this word mean, Sherif?
   Sherif : I don't know. Look it up in a .... if you don't know it.

4. **Selim** : What happens if you block a person on ....?
   Dalia : You don't get any messages from them.

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Who - When - How) you study hard, you get good marks.
2. You feel thirsty (if - so - but) you don't drink water.
3. When you book online, you can (choose - chooses - chose) which

seats you want.

4. If you press the button, the tablet (switches - switch - switched) off.
5. If we go by bus, it (am - is - are) quicker.
6. How can we get to Giza if we (missing - misses - miss) the bus?
7. Does your aunt always (cooks - cooked - cook) feteer when you visit her?
8. If you (heat - heats - heated) sugar, it melts.
9. If you find my keys, please (called - call - calls) this number.
10. It means there's dust in the sky when the clouds (is - am - are) red.
11. My English always gets better when I (studied - study - studies) the lessons again at home.
12. You feel hungry (what - when - where) you don't eat.
13. She (could come - can come - came) with us if she has free time.
14. If you buy two T-shirts, you (get - gets - got) one free.
15. If you (doesn't water - don't water - water) plants, they die.
16. If you press this button, the red light (turns on - turn on - turned on).
17. If I (eats - eat - ate) too much cake, I get a stomach ache.
18. If the TV (work - don't work - doesn't work), don't use the remote control.
19. If he doesn't have enough money, he (can buy - couldn't buy - can't buy) that expensive bike.
20. My cat (tries - try- tried) to catch a bee when she sees it.

5 Choose the correct answer:

Prepositio

1. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim (in - on - at) the spring.
2. Let's meet outside the school (in - on - at) 10:30 am.
3. We had a science class (in - on - at) Monday.
4. They went on a trip to the Red Sea (in - on - at) July.
5. Great news! I'm having a party (in - on - at) my birthday!
6. What did you do (in - on - of) the weekend?

7. When do you get up (in - on - at) school days?
8. I get up (in - on - at) 7 o'clock.
9. We walk back home from school (in - on - at) the afternoon.
10. They came to live here (in - on - at) 2021.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. but - Study - about - no longer - for - 30 minutes.

▶ ....

2. the city - can - We - fun - have - in.

▶ ....

3. My - tickets - books - the - online - dad.

▶ ....

4. on this - product - had - discount - a great - We.

▶ ....

5. do - How - you - study time - during - concentrate?

▶ ....?

6. the - city - we - Can - go to - bus - by?

▶ ....?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. mom there s a problem with the freezer

▶ ....

2. mrs manal lets us use pencils in the test

▶ ....

3. we had a math class on sunday

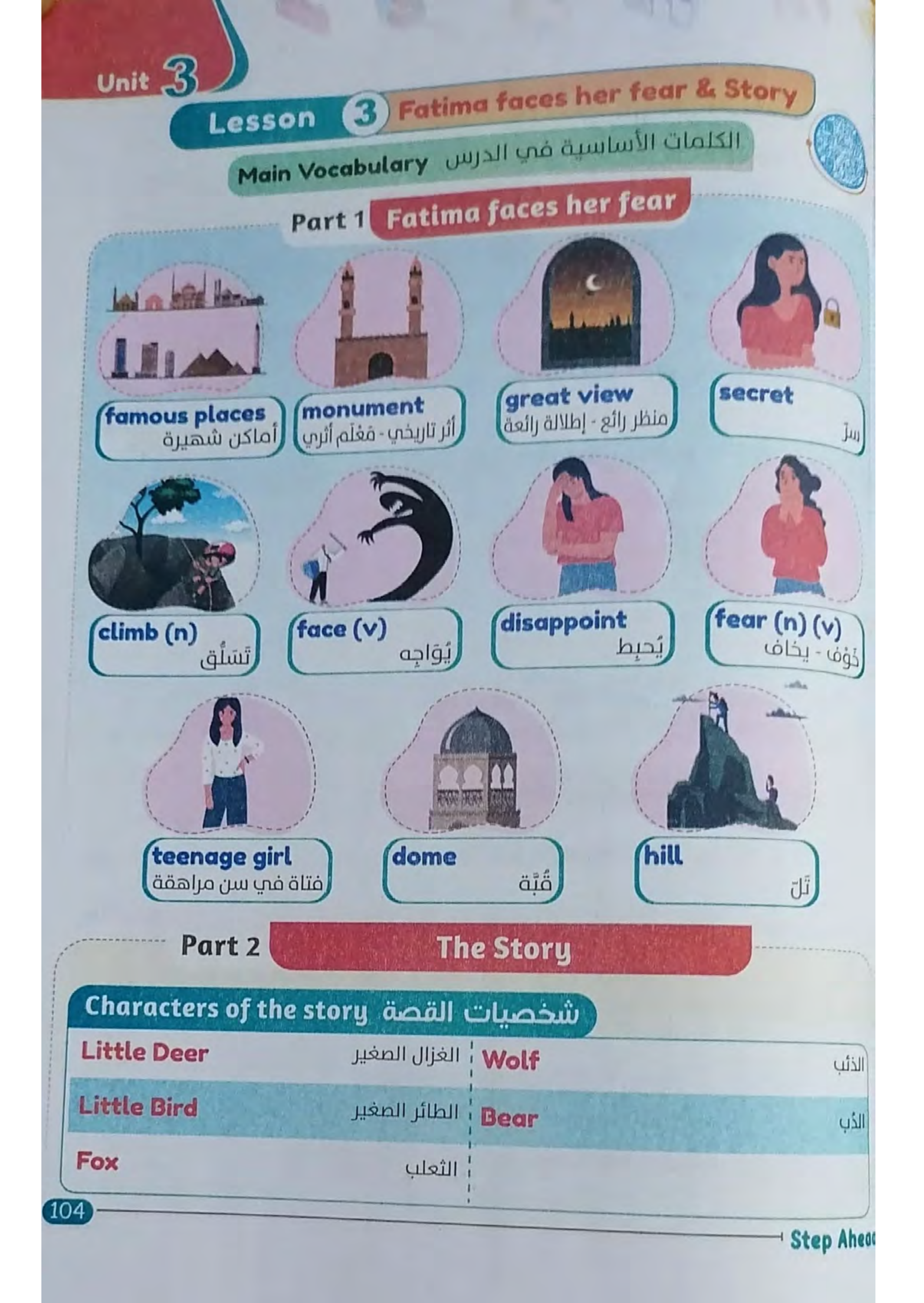
▶ ....

4. he went on a trip to hurghada in october

▶ ....

5. which city do you like to live in giza or alexandria

▶ ....



Unit 3

Lesson 3 Fatima faces her fear & Story

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

Part 1 Fatima faces her fear

English	Arabic
famous places	أماكن شهيرة
monument	أثر تاريخي - مَعْلَم أثري
great view	منظر رائع - إطلالة رائعة
secret	سرّ
climb (n)	تَسَلُّق
face (v)	يُوَاجِه
disappoint	يُحبِط
fear (n) (v)	خَوْف - يخاف
teenage girl	فتاة في سن مراهقة
dome	قُبَّة
hill	تَلّ

Part 2 The Story

Characters of the story شخصيات القصة

Little Deer	الغزال الصغير	Wolf	الذئب
Little Bird	الطائر الصغير	Bear	الدُب
Fox	الثعلب		



Lesson 3

forest	غابة
river	نهر
lake	بحيرة
puddle	بركة ماء
stream	جَدْوَل مائي
brave	شجاع
proud	فخور
sparkle	يتلألأ - يلمع

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Adjectives

scared	مرعوب	excited	متحمس
calmer	أكثر هدوءًا	clear	نقي
fantastic	رائع	cool	بارد
typical day	يوم اعتيادي	famous	مشهور
incredible	لا يُصَدَّق - رائع	tall buildings	أبنية عالية

Prepositions

afraid of heights	خائف من المرتفعات	run on	يواصل الركض (الجري)
look after	يعتني بـ	climb up	يتسلق
look at	ينظر إلى	come back	يعود - يرجع

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
disappoint	يُخيِّب - يُخيِّب أمل	disappointed
fear	يخاف	feared
shout	يصيح	shouted
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after
climb	يتسلق	climbed
walk	يمشي	walked
lift	يرفع	lifted
happen	يَحْدُث	happened

Present		Past
watch	يشاهد	watched
help	يساعد	helped
stop	يتوقف - يوقف	stopped
sparkle	يتلألأ - يلمع	sparkled
face	يواجه	faced
decide	يُقرِّر	decided
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
smile	يبتسم	smiled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
eat	يأكل	ate
drink	يشرب	drank
say	يقول	said
see	يرى	saw
come	يأتي	came
catch	يمسك	caught
know	يعرف	knew
make	يصنع	made
think	يفكر	thought

Present		Past
run	يجري	ran
go	يذهب	went
sing	يغني	sang
give	يعطي	gave
hear	يسمع	heard
find	يجد	found
feel	يشعر	felt
tell	يخبر	told
understand	يفهم	understood

Lesson 3

Pronunciation



(w) = /w/		(v) = /v/	
wolf	ذئب	violin	آلة كمان (آلة موسيقية)
water	ماء	volcano	بركان
window	نافذة - شباك	vegetables	خضراوات
wet	مُبتَل - مُبلَّل	vet	طبيب بيطري
whale	حوت	veil	طرحة - وشاح - حجاب
west	اتجاه الغرب	vest	سُترة - صديري
walk	يمشي	van	سيارة كبيرة - شاحنة
web	شبكة العنكبوت	visit (v)	يزور
worm	دودة	vase	مزهرية - فازة
white	أبيض	very	جدًا
wear	يرتدي	village	قرية

Read and learn





1\. Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places.

تأتي أمل ابنة عم فاطمة المفضلة لزيارتها. إنها المرة الأولى التي تزور فيها أمل أسوان. إنها متحمسة جدًا، وتريد أن ترى كل الأماكن الشهيرة.



2\. Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up the hill to it – there's a great view from there!"

تُري أمل لفاطمة صورة. "هل يمكننا الذهاب لزيارة قبة أبو الهوا؟ يمكننا صعود التل للوصول إليها - هناك إطلالة رائعة من هناك!"



3. Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?

لا تعرف فاطمة ماذا تقول. إنها تريد أن تجعل أمل سعيدة، لكن لديها سر: إنها تخشى المرتفعات. كيف يمكنها صعود التل إلى القبة؟



4. Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says, "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."

لا تريد فاطمة أن تخيب أمل ابنة عمها، لذلك قررت مواجهة خوفها. تقول: "هذه فكرة جيدة، لنذهب يوم الثلاثاء بعد الظهر. يمكننا مشاهدة غروب الشمس".



5. It's Tuesday and the girls are at Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."

إنه يوم الثلاثاء، والفتيات عند قبة أبو الهوا. وبعد صعود طويل يصلون إلى القمة. وجه فاطمة شاحب. إنها خائفة جدًا. لكن أمل تمسك بيدها وتبتسم. ثم تقول: "تنفسي ببطء. يمكنك فعل هذا يا فاطمة. الآن انظري حولك".



6. Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared anymore. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!

تشعر فاطمة أنها أكثر هدوءًا. وترفع رأسها لتنظر إلى المنظر. إنه مذهل . فجأة لم تعد تشعر بالخوف. إنها تشعر بالفخر للعيش في مكان بهذه الروعة!

Tip!

Pictures can help you understand what a story is about and give you extra detail. For example, the background can show you where the action happens, and the faces of the characters can tell you how they feel at that moment.

يمكن للصور أن تساعدك في فهم ما تدور حوله القصة وتعطيك تفاصيل أكثر. على سبيل المثال، يمكن للخلفية أن توضح لك أين تقع هذه الأحداث، ويمكن أن تخبرك وجوه الشخصيات كيف يشعرون في هذه اللحظة.

Little Deer in the forest



Little Deer runs through the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. Next, he comes to a river. The river is cool and clear. But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a small stream. The stream sparkles in the sun. "Finally!" he says. "I can have a... Oh no!" Little Deer sees Fox. "I can't drink from the same stream as Fox. Fox wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large puddle. It isn't blue like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle like the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!

Just then, Little Deer sees Little Bird. Little Bird sees Little Deer, too, but she isn't afraid. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle.

Little Deer watches Little Bird. "Hmm," he thinks. "If Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too!"

Little Deer goes back to the beautiful, blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and Fox. But this time, Little Deer goes to the lake and has a drink. It is delicious. Little Deer feels happy and proud.

الغزال الصغير في الغابة

يركض الغزال الصغير عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى بحيرة زرقاء جميلة، ويقرر التوقُّف لِشُرب الماء. وعندها يرى الذئب. الذئب يشرب من البحيرة.

يقول الغزال الصغير: "أوه لا! لا أستطيع أن أشرب من نفس البحيرة التي يشرب منها الذئب. فالذئب يريد أن يأكلني!"

يواصل الغزال الصغير الركض عبر الغابة. وبعد ذلك يصل إلى نهر. النهر بارد وصافٍ. ولكن بينما يذهب الغزال الصغير للشُرب منه، يرى الدب. الدب يشرب من النهر.

يقول الغزال الصغير: "أوه لا! لا أستطيع أن أشرب من نفس النهر الذي يشرب منه الدب. فالدب يريد أن يأكلني!"

يواصل الغزال الصغير الركض عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى جَدْوَلٍ مائيٍّ صغير. يتلألأ ماء الجَدْوَل في الشمس. يقول الغزال الصغير: «أخيراً! يمكنني الحصول على ... أوه لا!» يرى الغزال الصغير الثعلب. «لا أستطيع أن أشرب من نفس الجَدْوَل الذي يشرب منه الثعلب. فالثعلب يريد أن يأكلني!»

يواصل الغزال الصغير الركض عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى جَدْوَلٍ مائيٍّ صغير. يتلألأ ماء الجَدْوَل في الشمس. يقول الغزال الصغير: "أخيراً! يمكنني الحصول على ... أوه لا!" يرى الغزال الصغير الثعلب. "لا أستطيع أن أشرب من نفس الجَدْوَل الذي يشرب منه الثعلب. فالثعلب يريد أن يأكلني!"

يواصل الغزال الصغير الركض عبر الغابة. لقد وصل إلى بِرْكَة ماء كبيرة. إنها ليست زرقاء كالبحيرة. وليست باردة وصافية كالنهر. ولا تتلألأ كالجَدْوَل المائي. لكن الغزال الصغير يشعر بالعطش الشديد الآن!

وعندها يرى الغزال الصغير الطائر الصغير. ويرى الطائر الصغير الغزال الصغير أيضًا، لكنه ليس خائفًا. الطائر الصغير يشرب من بِرْكَة الماء.

الغزال الصغير يراقب الطائر الصغير. ويفكر: "همممم، إذا كان بإمكان الطائر الصغير أن يكون شجاعًا، فيمكنني أن أكون شجاعًا أيضًا!"

يعود الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة الزرقاء الجميلة. ويرى الذئب والدب والثعلب. لكن هذه المرة، يذهب الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة ويشرب. إن الماء لذيذ! يشعر الغزال الصغير بالسعادة والفخر.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. Little Deer runs through	a) At the lake.
2. It is Amal's first time in Aswan.	b) to look at the view.
3. Where did it have a drink?	c) She's very excited.
4. She lifts her head	d) was cool and clear.
5. The water of the river	e) the forest.
	f) feels happy and proud.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cousin – scared – famous – Dome – Aswan

Fatima's favorite ① .... Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in ② .... She's very excited. She wants to see all the ③ .... places. Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the ④ .... of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up to the top – there's a great view from there!"

3 Write the following words in the correct column:

water - wolf - volcano - window - violin - vegetables - vet - west - veil - worm

/v/	/w/
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you." Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. She can see all of the city below her. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared anymore. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word 'scared' means (brave - afraid - excited).
2. Fatima feels proud to live in such a (horrible - fantastic - boring) place!

B Answer these questions:

3. What do the girls do at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?

▶ ....

4. Who helped Fatima to feel calmer? And how?

▶ ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. all the - want to - I - famous - see - places.

▶ ....

2. a - shows - Amal - photo - Fatima.

▶ ....

3. forest - the - through - Deer - Little - runs.

▶ ....

4. from - There's - view - there - a - great!

▶ .... !



5. doesn't - He - know - to - what - say.

▶ ....

6. She - make - happy - everyone - to - wants.

▶ ....

7. want - I - you - disappoint - don't - to.

▶ ....

8. the - river - a drink - Bear - from - has.

▶ ....

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. fatima's favorite cousin amal comes to visit her

▶ ....

2. what s the weather like on sunday

▶ ....

3. how much does it cost

▶ ....

4. i don t like reading

▶ ....

5. yes give me some water please

▶ ....

6. he s a clever boy

▶ ....

7. no she isn t good at painting

▶ ....

8. it is amal's first time in aswan

▶ ....

Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project

All the fun of the Carnival!



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



world of fantasy عالم خيالي



fun متعة - مَرَح



destination الغاية - المكان المقصود



simulation theater مسرح المحاكاة



shows عروض



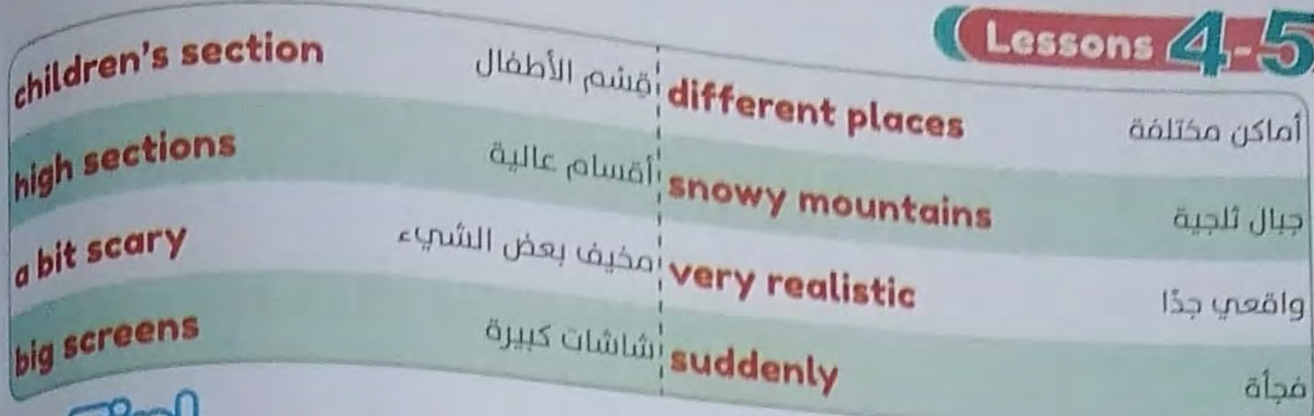
stores متاجر

Dream Park Rides

Orient Train	لعبة قطار الشرق	**rollercoaster**	قطار الملاهي
Waterfalls	لعبة الشلالات		

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

blog post	منشور في مدونة	**tickets**	تذاكر
date	تاريخ	**seat**	مقعد
title	عنوان	**under the ocean**	تحت المحيط
carnival	مدينة ملاهي	**brave**	شجاع
birthday surprise	مفاجأة عيد ميلاد	**sound and light effects**	مؤثرات صوتية وضوئية



children's section	قسم الأطفال	different places	أماكن مختلفة
high sections	أقسام عالية	snowy mountains	جبال ثلجية
a bit scary	مخيف بعض الشيء	very realistic	واقعي جدًا
big screens	شاشات كبيرة	suddenly	فجأة

Tip!

A blog post should have a title and date, and use informal language and first person pronouns (I, my, me). It has to include a personal story, and it usually gives the writer's opinions and feelings about their experiences. Bloggers often add photos to make their blogs more attractive.

يجب أن يكون لمنشور المدونة عنوان وتاريخ، وأن يُستخدم فيه لغة غير رسمية وضمائر المتكلم (I, my, me). يجب أن يتضمن قصة شخصية، وعادة ما يتضمن آراء الكاتب ومشاعره حول تجاربه. غالبًا ما يضيف المدونون صورًا لجعل مدوناتهم أكثر جاذبية.

Nashwa's blog



BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE



All the fun of the Carnival!

Tuesday June 3rd

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy - it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

The children's section has nine rides including the Orient Train. We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. My brother loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the Waterfalls ride. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet!

In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater. You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world - snowy mountains even under the ocean. It's very realistic - I can't wait! What a great birthday present - thanks Mom and Dad!

مُدَوَّنة نشوى

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

كل متعة مدينة الملاهي!

الثلاثاء، الثالث من يونيو

اليوم هو عيد ميلادي، وخمن أين أنا؟ أنا مع عائلتي في دريم بارك في مدينة الجيزة من أجل مفاجأة عيد ميلادي الخاصة! أريد أن أخبركم بكل شيء عن المكان.

عندما تصل إلى المنتزه، تجد نفسك فجأة في عالم خيالي - إنه أمر مثير للغاية. هناك الكثير مما يمكن رؤيته والقيام به هنا. هناك ألعاب ركوب رائعة يمكنك تجربتها مثل قطار الملاهي (إذا كنت شجاعًا!)، ومسارح حيث يمكنك مشاهدة العروض. وهناك أماكن لتناول الطعام ومتاجر أيضًا.

يحتوي قسم الأطفال على تسع ألعاب ركوب، بما في ذلك "قطار الشرق". لدينا تذاكر تلك اللعبة الساعة 10 - يحب أخي ركوب الألعاب المائية، لذلك فهو يريد ركوب بعض منها في وقت لاحق من صباح اليوم. في الساعة الحادية عشر والنصف، لدينا تذاكر للعبة الشلالات. وتحتوي تلك اللعبة على بعض الأقسام العالية، لذا فهي مخيفة بعض الشيء، وعند ركوبها تبتل للغاية!

أريد أنا وأبي الذهاب إلى مسرح المحاكاة بعد الظهر. حيث تجلس في مقعدك وحولك شاشات كبيرة من كل اتجاه، وهناك تأثيرات صوتية وضوئية، وتشعر وكأنك في أماكن مختلفة حول العالم - الجبال الثلجية، وحتى تحت المحيط. إنها واقعية للغاية - لا أُطيق الانتظار! يا لها من هدية عيد ميلاد رائعة - شكرًا يا أمي ويا أبي!



Sharm El-Sheikh - an amazing holiday destination!

شرم الشيخ - وجهة مذهلة لقضاء العُطلات!



For only LE 1000 per night, per person in a double room.

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do.

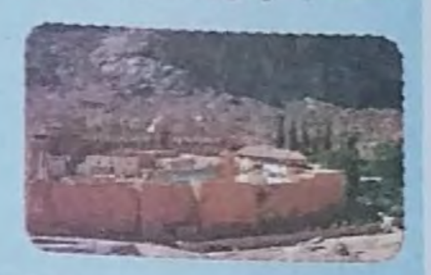
شرم الشيخ هي مدينة مشوّقة ومزدحمة في مصر تُطل على البحر الأحمر. هناك الكثير مما يمكن رؤيته والقيام به فيها.



- go quad biking in the desert
- الذهاب لركوب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء.



- swim in the sea
- السباحة في البحر.
- relax at the beach
- الاسترخاء على الشاطئ.



- visit St Catherine's monastery
- زيارة دير سانت كاترين.
- eat good food
- تناول طعام جيد.

How to make a brochure

How to make a tourist brochure

1. Find some photos or pictures of the places you want to include in your brochure.
2. Write a description of each place under the photos.
3. Check that the spelling, grammar, and punctuation is correct.

كيفية عمل منشور سياحي

1. ابحث عن بعض الصور أو الرسومات للأماكن التي تريد أن تُضمّنها في منشورك.
2. اكتب وصفًا لكل مكان تحت الصور.
3. تأكد من صحة الإملاء والقواعد اللغوية وعلامات الترقيم.

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

■ **Manar is talking to Omnia on the phone.**

fantasy - birthday - theater - present - rollercoaster

Manar : Hi, Omnia. Where are you now?

Omnia : Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special ① .... surprise at the Carnival.

Manar : Happy birthday! How is it?

Omnia : It's a world of ② .... - it's really exciting.

Manar : What about the rides there?

Omnia : There are amazing rides to try like the ③ .... (if you're brave!), the Orient Train, and the Waterfalls.

Manar : What a great birthday ④ ....!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

effects - environment - screens - realistic - theater

I want to go to the simulation ① .... When you go there, you sit in your seat with big ② .... all around you, and there are sound and light ③ ...., and it feels like you're in different places around the world - snowy mountains, even under the ocean. It's very ④ ....! What a great experience!



3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Hi! I'm Tamer. Today is my birthday, and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it. When you arrive at the Carnival, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy - it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try, like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores too.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. You can try the rollercoaster if you are (scared - sad - brave).
2. The underlined word 'exciting' means (interesting - boring - tiring).

B Answer these questions:

3. Where is Tamer today? Who is with him?

▶ ....

4. Why are they at this place?

▶ ....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. at the Carnival - with - family - I'm - my.

▶ ....

2. are - shows - of - a lot - and concerts - There.

▶ ....

3. don't - like - rollercoasters - I.

▶ ....

4. Talia - with - Did - enjoy - you - your time?

▶ .... ?

5. waterfalls - We - for - have - the - tickets.

▶ ....

6. I - go to - want to - simulation - the - theater.

▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i love my special birthday surprise at the carnival

▶ ....

2. no you can t eat my burgers

▶ ....

3. is mohamed salah a good footballer

▶ ....

4. who s your favorite singer

▶ ....

5. i enjoy my time with my family a lot

▶ ....

6 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A day at the Carnival"

▶ **Ideas to help you:** rollercoaster - Orient Train - simulation theater - Waterfalls - enjoy - play

....

....

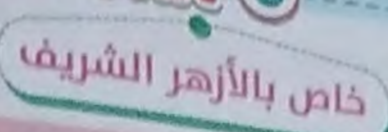
....

....

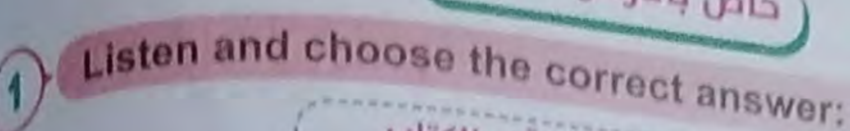
....

....

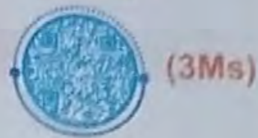
Test 5 on Unit 3







1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. It's Amal's (second - first - third) time in Aswan.
2. Amal wants to (climb up - climb down - see) the hill to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa.
3. There is a great (scene - view - look) from there.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3Ms)

Dome - view - vacation - sunset

Amal : I'm really excited about our ① ....
Fatima : Yes, me too! I love visiting new places! Where can we go?
Amal : Can we go visit the ② .... of Abu Al-Hawa?
Fatima : What can we do there?
Amal : We can climb up the hill to the dome - there's a great ③ .... from there!
Fatima : That's a good idea. Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. If she (go - goes - will go) by bus, it is quicker.
2. I sometimes go to bed (on - in - at) midnight.
3. Can he (help - helps - helping) you when you need help?
4. His birthday is (in - on - at) March 11th.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Mr. Ahmed is a teacher who works at a prep school in Giza. He teaches English. He is thirty years old. He lives in a house near school, so he walks to his work every day. Mr. Ahmed is married to Eman. <u>They</u> haven't got any children yet. Eman is a housewife, and she is four years younger than her husband. Ahmed likes reading and watching TV in his free time.

Eman prefers playing computer games in her free time. She also likes watching TV.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Eman is (30 - 26 - 24) years old.
2. Eman works at (school - home - hospital).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to? ▶ ....
4. What does Eman do in her free time? ▶ ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3M)

1. is - She - of - heights - afraid. ▶ ....
2. has - lake - from - the - Wolf - a drink. ▶ ....
3. your - are - What - tips - for - studying? ▶ ....

6 Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

- should tamer go quad biking on wednesday ▶ ....

7 Write an email to your friend Shaza:

(5M)

Tell her how you organize your study to get ready for the midterm test, how you take breaks between study times, and the subjects you're good at and not good at. Your email address is menna@yahoo.com. And your friend's email address is shaza@hotmail.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....,

....

....

..........,

....

Test 6 on Unit 3

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

Total ... 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. When you arrive at the (zoo - garden - Carnival - school), you are suddenly in a fantasy world.
2. You can try the (rollercoaster - Waterfalls - Raging River - Orient Train) if you are brave!
3. You can watch shows and concerts in the (cinemas - schools - restaurants - theaters).

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. Today is my ....
2. I'm with my family at the ....
3. There are amazing rides to try like the .... if you are brave.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Where do you usually go (on - in - to - for) the weekend?
2. If you work for a long time without breaks, you (can - can't - will - wouldn't) concentrate.
3. When she (go - will go - can go - goes) to bed late, she's tired and lazy in the morning.
4. I often get lots of presents (at - in - on - of) my birthday.

4 Read and match "A" with "B": (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. I'm excited about our vacation.	a) He will meet us at the hotel.
2. We can climb up to the top,	b) Okay, cool!
3. Where will the guide meet us?	c) stops for a nice cool drink.
4. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting	d) there's a great view from there!
5. Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret.	e) Yes, me too!
	f) city in Egypt by the Red Sea.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6...

Hi Mazen,
Here we are in Sharm El-Sheikh. We are having a great time. The hote[l] is the biggest in the city.
Our room is really nice, as it looks over the sea. There are lots of cafe[s] and restaurants here. They have fantastic and delicious food, but it isn['t] cheap. It was windy when we arrived on Sunday, but the weather is grea[t] today. We go to the beach every day. The people here are nice an[d] friendly. I'm so happy.
Bye for now,
Fady

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the underlined word 'biggest' is (shortest - tallest - smallest - largest).
2. The food in restaurants is (cheap - very cheap - not expensive - expensi[ve]

B Answer these questions:

3. Who wrote this email? ▶ ....
4. How are the restaurants in Sharm El-Sheikh? ▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (4...

1. do - school days - you - When - on - get up?
2. go to - and - ride on - Let's - the theme park - a rollercoaster!
3. doesn't - she - Suddenly - feel - any more - scared.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (...

- fatima's favorite cousin amal comes to visit her in aswan

8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5...

"A visit to Cairo Tower"

▶ Ideas to help you:

▶ When did you go?
▶ What did you eat?
▶ Who did you go with?
▶ What did you do there?
▶ What did you see at the top?

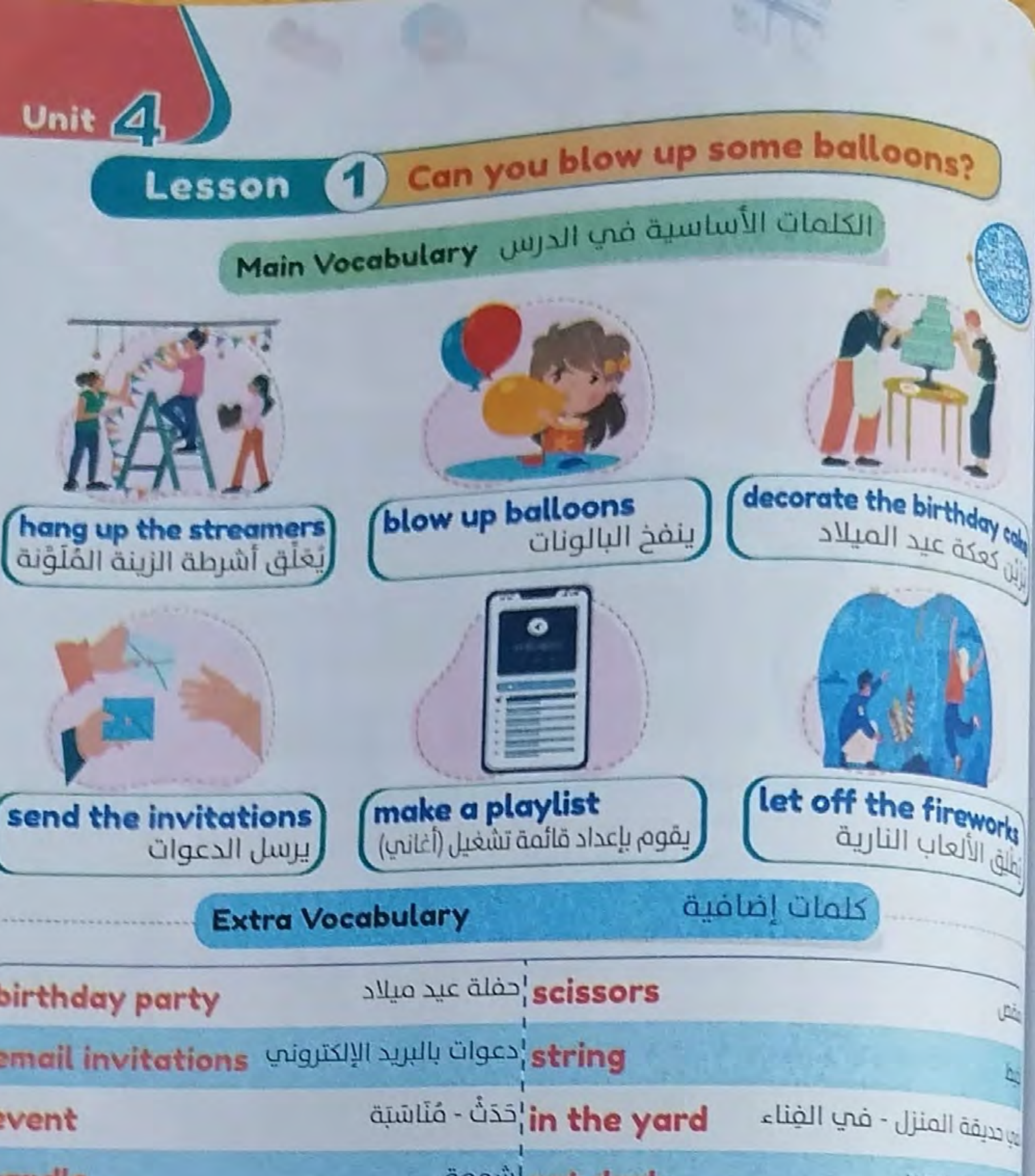
....
....
....


HAPPY
Unit 4
Celebrate Good Times!
إحْتَفِل بالأوقات السعيدة!
In this unit I will ....
listen, read, and write about celebrations.
talk about things that are happening at or around the moment of speaking using the present continuous.
understand the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
learn to estimate volumes.
understand the difference between the sounds /ei/ and /e/.
write a formal invitation.
research and make a poster about a celebration.

Unit 4

Lesson 1 Can you blow up some balloons?

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد	scissors	مقص
email invitations	دعوات بالبريد الإلكتروني	string	خيط
event	حَدَثٌ - مُنَاسَبَة	in the yard	في حديقة المنزل - في الفناء
candle	شمعة	get dark	يظلم - يحلّ الظلام
Pass me	ناولني	adult	شخص بالغ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
discuss	يناقش	discussed	ask	يسأل - يطلب	asked
listen	يستمع	listened	talk	يتكلم	talked

Present		Past
help	يساعد	helped
pass	يُمرّر - يُناوِل	passed
need	يحتاج	needed

Present		Past
love	يحب	loved
decorate	يُزيِّن	decorated
tie	يربط	tied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
blow up	ينفخ	blew up
hang up	يُعلِّق	hung up
let off	يُطلِق	let off
cut	يقص - يقطع	cut
read	يقرأ	read
choose	يختار	chose
come	يأتي	came

Present		Past
get dark	يُظلِم - يحل الظلام	got dark
find	يجد	found
make	يصنع	made
write	يكتب	wrote
know	يعرف	knew
mean	يقصد - يعني	meant
send	يُرسِل	sent

The lesson notes

I'm tying the streamers together.

- أنا أربط أشرطة الزينة المُلَوَّنة مع بعضها.
- كلمة "**tying**" هي في الأصل كلمة "**tie**".
- لاحظ أن: عند إضافة "**ing**" لفعلٍ منتهٍ بـ "**ie**"، تُحول الـ "**ie**" إلى "**y**".

die ▶▶▶ dying	lie ▶▶▶ lying	tie ▶▶▶ tying

RSVP

- "RSVP" is an initialism of the French phrase, "répondez s'il vous plaît.". This directly translates to "Respond, if you please.". The initialism is often used to confirm attendance for an event, such as a wedding or birthday party.
- "**RSVP**" هي الحروف الأولى من العبارة الفرنسية "**répondez s'il vous plaît.**" وترجمتها هي "رُدّ إذا سمحت". غالبًا ما تُستخدم هذه الأحرف الأولى لتأكيد الحضور لحدثٍ ما، مثل حفل زفاف أو حفلة عيد ميلاد.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

In China, people eat noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to represent a long life for the person.

في الصين، يأكل الناس النودلز (مكرونة صينية) في أعياد ميلادهم. النودلز تكون طويلة جدًا لتمثّل حياة طويلة للشخص.





Read and learn

Who is the birthday party for?

Hani : Hi Youssef, what are you doing?

Youssef : Hi, Hani. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister Nesma's party. Can you help me?

Hani : Sure. What can I do, cousin?

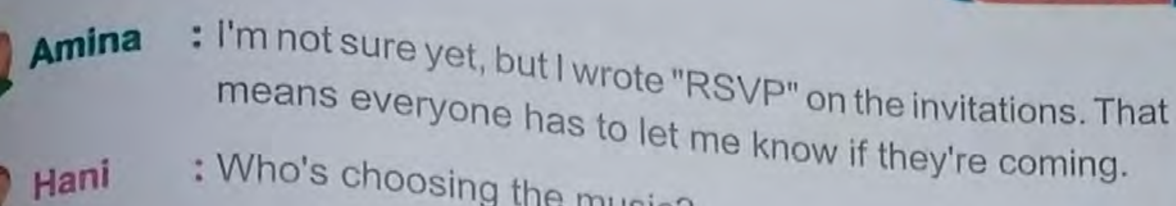
Youssef : Will you pass me the scissors, please? I'm tying the streamers together and I need to cut the string. Can you also blow up some balloons? We need to hang those up, too.

Hani : Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?

Youssef : Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the birthday cake. They have candles for it, too. Oh, there's Amina. Amina! Are you sending the invitations?

Amina : Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone email invitations.

Youssef : Good idea. How many people are coming?



Amina : I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP" on the invitations. That means everyone has to let me know if they're coming.

Hani : Who's choosing the music?

Amina : Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.

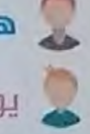
Hani : That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to make it after she finishes the cake.

Amina : And we need to find an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark.

Youssef : Yes, Nesma loves them. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

لمن حفلة عيد الميلاد؟

هاني : مرحبًا يا يوسف، ماذا تفعل؟



يوسف: مرحبًا يا هاني. أنا أُعَلِّق الأشرطة المُلَوَّنة من أجل حفلة أختي نسمة. هل بإمكانك مساعدتي؟



هاني : بالتأكيد. ماذا يمكنني أن أفعل يا ابن عمي؟

يوسف: هلّا تناولني المقص من فضلك؟ أنا أربط الأشرطة المُلَوَّنة ببعضها وأحتاج أن أقطع الخيط. هل يمكنك نَفْخُ بعض البالونات أيضًا؟ فنحن بحاجة إلى تعليقها كذلك.



هاني : بالطبع! ماذا تفعل شقيقَتَيْك الأُخْرَيَيْن؟ هل تساعدان؟

يوسف: داليدا ونهى؟ نعم، إنهما يساعدان. إنهما يُزَيِّنان كعكة عيد الميلاد. ولديهم شموع من أجل ذلك أيضًا. أوه، ها هي أمينة. أمينة! هل تُرسلين الدعوات؟





أمينة : مرحبًا يا يوسف. نعم، أنا أفعل ذلك. لكنني أُرسل دعوات بالبريد الإلكتروني للجميع.

يوسف: فكرة جيدة. كم عدد الذين سيحضرون؟

أمينة : لست متأكدةً بعد، لكنني كتبتُ "أجبني من فضلك" على الدعوات. وهذا يعني أنه يجب على الجميع إخباري ما إذا كانوا قادمين.

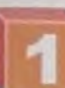
هاني : من سيختار الموسيقى؟

أمينة : ستُعِدُّ داليدا قائمة تشغيل على هاتفها. لقد أعدَّت قائمة تشغيل لحفلتي وكانت جميلة للغاية.

هاني : هذا صحيح. لقد كانت جيدة جدًا. يمكننا أن نطلب منها إعداد قائمة تشغيل بعد أن تنتهي من إعداد الكعكة.

أمينة : ونحن بحاجة إلى إيجاد شخص بالغ لإطلاق الألعاب النارية في الفِناء عندما يَحُلّ الظلام.

يوسف: نعم، نسمة تحبها. أعرف شخصًا، سأطلب من والدي فعل ذلك.

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. Who is the birthday party for?	a) the birthday cake.
2. Let's hang up	b) up some balloons.
3. You can blow	c) in the yard.
4. I'm sending everyone	d) It's for Nesma.
5. Dalida is decorating	e) email invitations.
	f) the streamers.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. We need an adult to let off the (streamers - fireworks - balloons).
2. Mahmoud has a very nice (playlist - invitation - cake) on his mobile. We can play it at the party.
3. Can you (let off - know - send) them email invitations?
4. Give me the scissors to cut the (string - birthday cake - candles).

5. My mom loves (decorating - hanging up - blowing up) birthday cakes.
6. I'm (hanging - blowing - sending) up the streamers for Nesma's party.
7. Can you (decorate - let off - blow up) some balloons?
8. We can ask Tamer to (blow - make - hang) a playlist.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

balloons - hanging - birthday - happy - string

Hany : Hi Youssef, what are you doing?

Youssef : Hi, Hany. I'm .... up the streamers for my sister Nesma's party. Can you help me?

Hany : Sure. What can I do, cousin?

Youssef : Will you pass me the scissors, please? I'm tying the streamers together and I need to cut the .... Can you also blow up some ....? We need to hang those up too.

Hany : Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?

Youssef : Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the .... cake. They have candles for it, too.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. Will - come to - you - party - my - birthday?
▶ .... ?
2. chocolate - don't - I - like - cakes - the.
▶ ....
3. the - My - all - decorates - cakes - mom.
▶ ....
4. My - is - brother - the - balloons - blowing up.
▶ ....
5. fireworks - Did - the - you - off - let?
▶ .... ?
6. some - play - Let's - music - nice.
▶ ....
7. you - Are - the - sending - invitations?
▶ .... ?

8. a playlist - made - my - for - party - Dalida.
▶ ....

9. an adult - We - need - off - to let - the fireworks.
▶ ....

10. all - love - I - friends - my.
▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what are nesma's sisters doing
▶ ....

2. they don t like carnivals
▶ ....

3. let's go to sharm el-sheikh on monday
▶ ....

4. do you enjoy your vacation
▶ ....

5. no i can t do this right now
▶ ....

6. dalida and noha are decorating the birthday cake
▶ ....

6 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Radwa:

Invite her to your birthday party, and tell her about the arrangements of the party. Your email address is mona@gmail.com, and your friend's email address is radwa@yahoo.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....,

....

....

................,

....

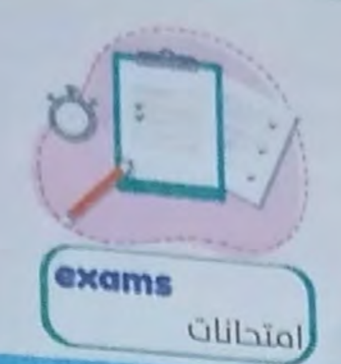
Lesson 2 I'm studying hard for my exams



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



study hard يذاكر بجدّ



exams امتحانات



documentary وثائقي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Expressions and Prepositions

get outside	يذهب إلى الخارج	how our revision is going	كيفية سَيْر المراجعة
do some exercise	نقوم ببعض التمرينات	is taking ages	يستغرق وقتًا طويلاً جدًا
a few times a week	بضع مرات أسبوعيًا	look forward to	يتطلّع إلى
slow reader	قارئ بطيء	indoors	داخل البيت

Conjugation of verbs

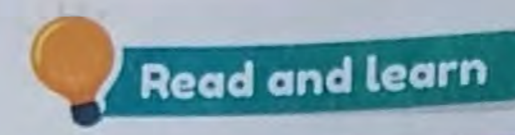
Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
relax	يسترخي - يستريح	relaxed	cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled
borrow	يستعير	borrowed	practice	يُمَارس - يتدرّب	practiced
talk	يتكلم	talked	bake	يخبز	baked
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	live	يعيش	lived
finish	يُنْهي	finished	study	يُذَاكِر - يَدْرُس	studied
play	يلعب	played	try	يُحَاوِل	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
have fun	يستمتع	had fun
feed	يُطعِم	fed
know	يعرف	knew
run	يجري	ran
take	يأخذ	took
write	يكتب	wrote

Present		Past
spend (time)	يقضي (وقت)	spent
go	يذهب	went
get me	يجلب لي - يُحْضِر لي	got me
say	يقول	said
tell	يُخْبِر	told
wear	يرتدي	wore

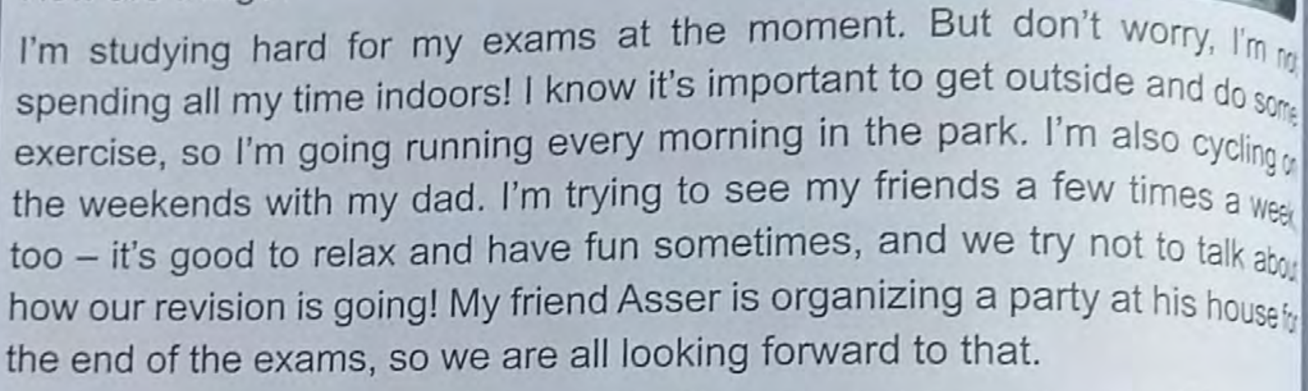


Read and learn

From : ali@qwikmail.com
To : eyad@egyptmail.com
Subject : What's your news?

Hi Eyad,

How are things?



I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week too – it's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision is going! My friend Asser is organizing a party at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that.

What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already! ☺

In your last email, you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing *Everything in Ancient Egypt* but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader. I am enjoying it – I love history books – and the documentary is good, too (my mom said she will get me the DVD). What about you? What are you reading?

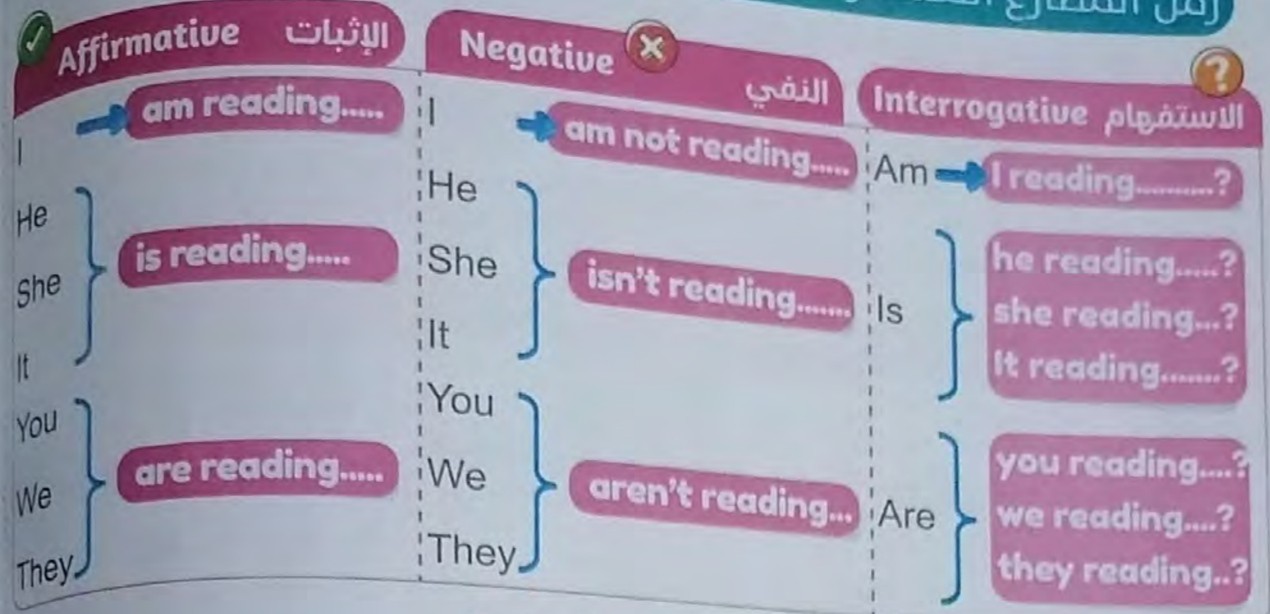
Write soon and tell me your news,

Ali

GRAMMAR STUDY

Lesson 2

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر



Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → am reading.....	I → am not reading.....	Am → I reading........?
He / She / It → is reading.....	He / She / It → isn't reading......	Is → he reading.....? / she reading...? / it reading.......?
You / We / They → are reading.....	You / We / They → aren't reading...	Are → you reading....? / we reading....? / they reading..?

■ يتكون من ← (am - is - are) + (v) فعل + ing

■ Nesma is wearing a red T-shirt.

■ **We use it to talk about actions that are happening at the moment of speaking.**

■ يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن ومستمر أثناء الكلام.

- Two boys are playing football now.
- We're helping to make the birthday cake at the moment.

■ **We also use it to talk about actions in progress around now.**

■ يُستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عن نشاط يتم في الفترة الحالية وليس بالضرورة أنه يقع لحظة الكلام.

- I'm studying for my exams this week.
- My dad is building a new house these days.
- We are practicing for the football game. It's on Sunday.
- They are building new cities in the desert this year.

- **We also use it to describe things that are happening in a picture.**

يُستخدم أيضًا لوصف الأشياء التي تحدث في صورة.

- What are Noha and Dalida doing there in the picture?
  - They're playing football with the balloons.

- **We sometimes use some words with the present continuous tense.**

أحيانًا ما تُستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن المضارع المستمر.

now	الآن	today	اليوم
at the moment	الآن - في هذه اللحظة	this (week)	هذا (الأسبوع)
Look	انظر	Listen	استمع - اسمع - أنصت

- She's talking on the phone at the moment.
- I'm reading an English book now.
- Look! A dog is playing with a cat.
- Listen! Birds are singing.
- She's doing lots of housework today.

- **When verbs end in a single (e), omit it before adding (ing).**

عند إضافة (ing) إلى فعل منتهٍ بـ (e)، يُحذف حرف الـ (e) قبل إضافة (ing).

have ▶ having	write ▶ writing	come ▶ coming
make ▶ making	ride ▶ riding	drive ▶ driving
wave ▶ waving	wake ▶ waking	shine ▶ shining

- **When verbs end in a consonant after a vowel, double the last consonant before adding (ing).**

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك قوى في النطق، نضاعف الحرف الأخير الساكن قبل إضافة الـ (ing).

run ▶ running	dig ▶ digging	swim ▶ swimming
put ▶ putting	stop ▶ stopping	cut ▶ cutting

■ In the negative form, we add (not) after (am - is - are).

■ عند النفي نُضيف (not) بعد (am - is - are).

- They aren't enjoying their vacation.
- She isn't doing her homework at the moment.

■ In the interrogative form, we use (am - is - are) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the (v. + ing).

■ عند عمل سؤال على المضارع المستمر، نبدأ السؤال بـ (am - is - are) أو نضع إحداها بعد أداة الاستفهام مع (الفعل + ing).

- Are you reading now? ▶ No, I am not.
- Is he riding his bike? ▶ Yes, he is.
- What are you doing, girls? ▶ We're helping to make the birthday cake.
- What's Ali doing? ▶ He's painting a picture.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. I'm studying hard	a) do some exercise, too.
2. It's important to get outside and	b) a party at his house.
3. What are you doing?	c) Yes, he is.
4. My friend Asser is organizing	d) No, she isn't.
5. Is she at the party?	e) I'm reading a book.
	f) for my exams.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The students (are - am - is) practicing hard for a music concert next month.

2. Nesma (am not - is - is not) wearing a red T-shirt. She's wearing a blue one
3. The girls (am not - is - are not) dancing.
4. (He - They - I) are playing football.
5. Tamer (are - am - is) wearing a party hat.
6. She (are - am - is) reading a book in an armchair.
7. We (aren't - isn't - is) enjoying our vacation.
8. She's (studying - study - studies) for her exams this week.
9. (Am - Is - Are) you playing football this year?
   ▶ Yes, (I am - I'm not - they are).
10. What are you (does - do - doing), girls?
11. We're (help - helps - helping) to make the birthday cake.
12. My dad (are working - work - is working) in France for three month
    We miss him!
13. Where (are - am - is) your brother studying in the USA?
14. Prices (الأسعار) are (goes up - going up - go up) a lot this year.
15. Where (are - am - is) Basel and Amir playing their football game toda
16. I'm (practicing - practice - practices) for the football game.
17. I (am not - am - is) playing basketball this week; I have too much scho
    work.
18. What (are not - are - is) you doing this week, Malak?
19. Two boys (play - plays - are playing) volleyball at the moment.
20. What (are - am - is) Noha and Dalida doing there?
21. The boys (eat - are eating - eats) pizza now.
22. Hany and Youssef are (try - trying - tries) to climb the tree.
23. We (have fun - has fun - are having fun) at the beach these days.
24. (Are - Am - Is) he wearing a blue T-shirt?
25. Look! Three girls (cycle - are cycling - cycles) to the park.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. We - the decorations - buying - today - are.

▶ ....

2. playing - Are - a - they - game?

▶ ……………………………………………… ?

3. wearing - a - hat - I'm - new.

▶ ……………………………………………… .

4. some - Ahmed - is - cakes - eating.

▶ ……………………………………………… .

5. sisters - My - cooking - food - some - are.

▶ ……………………………………………… .

6. your - taking - dad - Is - photos?

▶ ……………………………………………… ?

7. helping - Laila and Mona - their - are - mom.

▶ ……………………………………………… .

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. muhammad isn t playing basketball

▶ ………………………………………………

2. he s wearing a wonderful suit

▶ ………………………………………………

3. we aren t enjoying our vacation

▶ ………………………………………………

4. no i am not happy

▶ ………………………………………………

5. is aliaa eating her sandwich

▶ ………………………………………………

5 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"What are you and your family doing these days?"

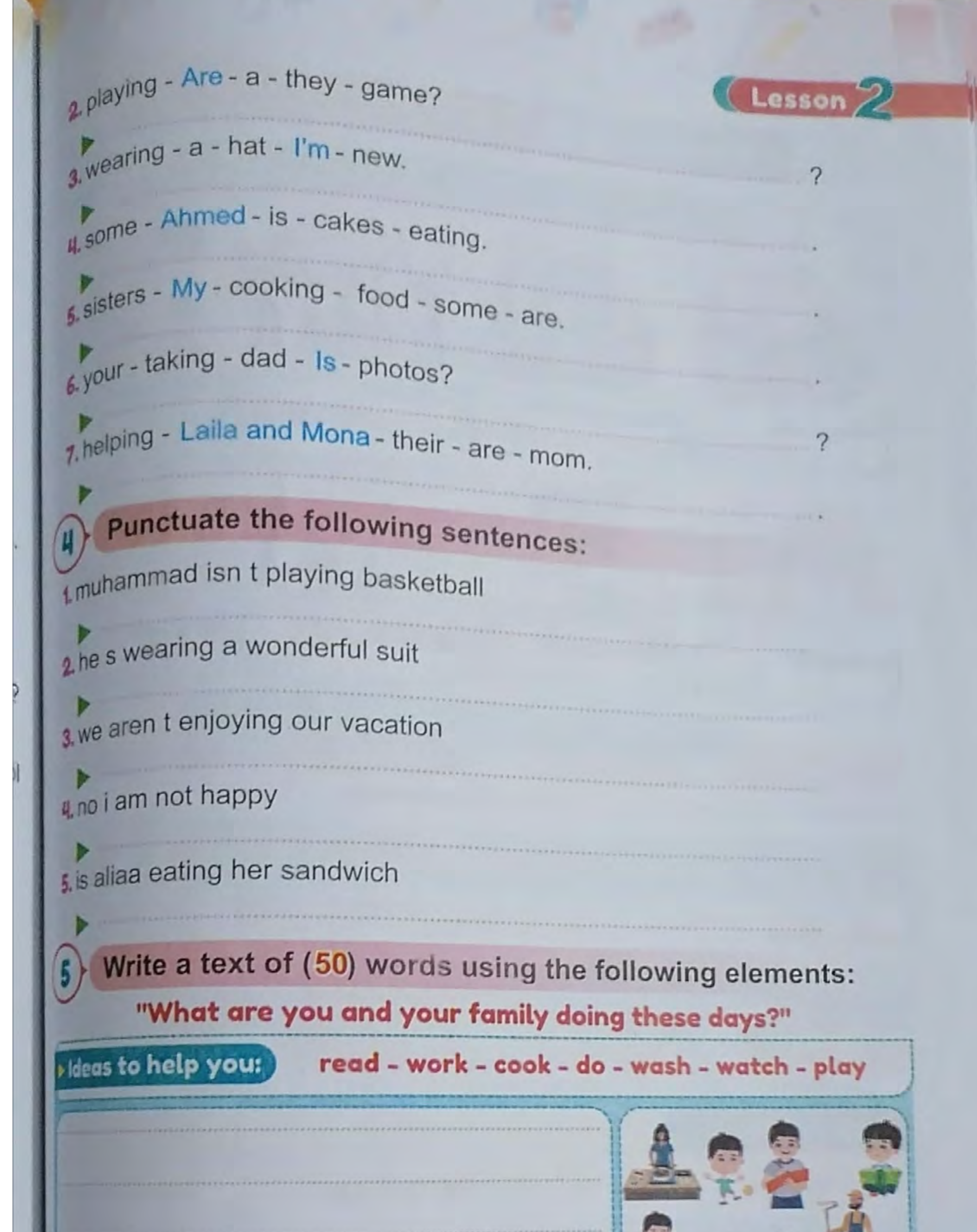
Ideas to help you: read - work - cook - do - wash - watch - play

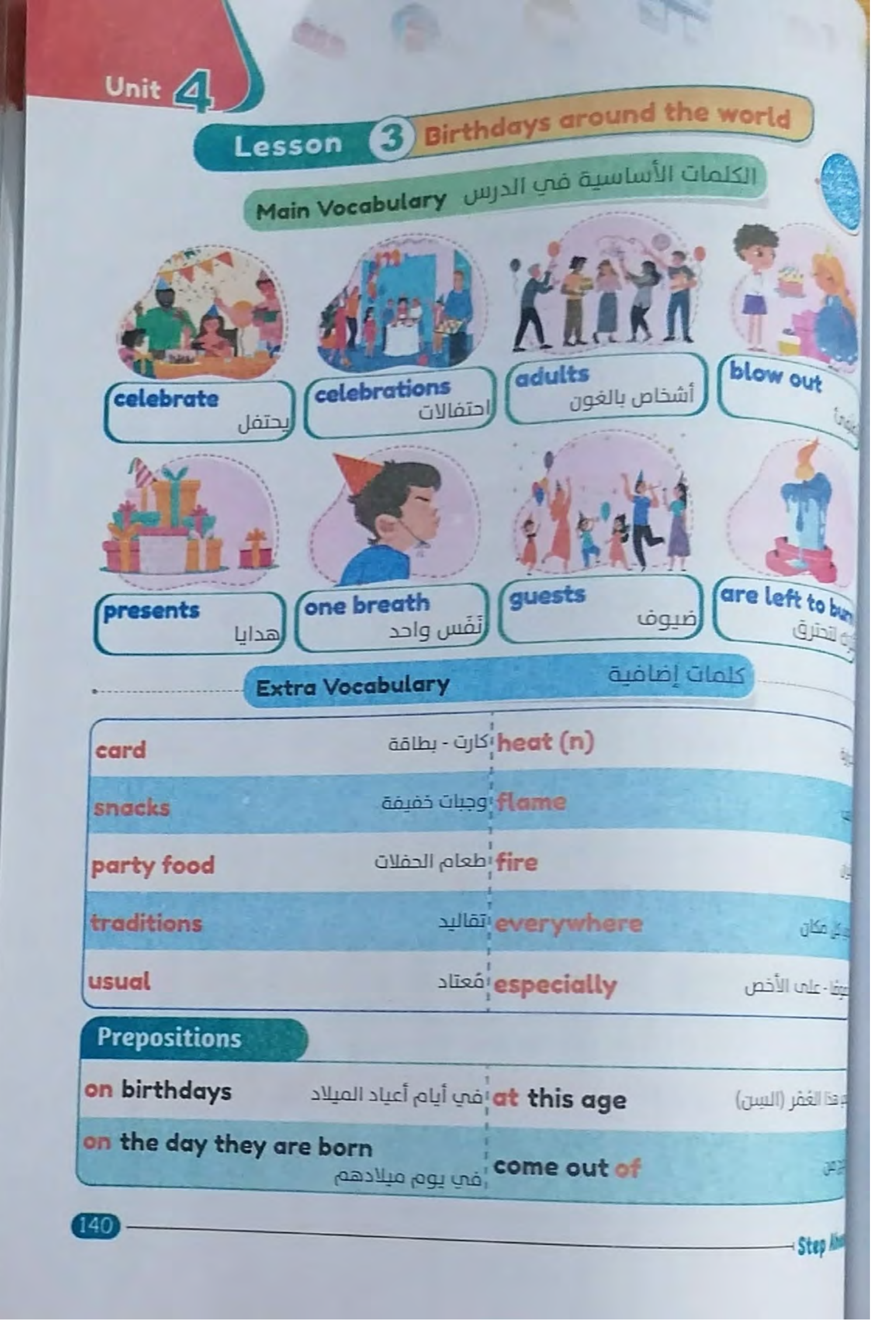
………………………………………………

………………………………………………

………………………………………………

………………………………………………





Unit 4

Lesson 3 Birthdays around the world

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

celebrate يحتفل	**celebrations** احتفالات	**adults** أشخاص بالغون	**blow out**
presents هدايا	**one breath** نفس واحد	**guests** ضيوف	**are left to burn** تحترق

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

card	كارت - بطاقة	heat (n)	
snacks	وجبات خفيفة	flame	
party food	طعام الحفلات	fire	
traditions	تقاليد	everywhere	كل مكان
usual	مُعتاد	especially	على الأخص

Prepositions

on birthdays	في أيام أعياد الميلاد	**at** this age	هذا العمر (السن)
on the day they are born	في يوم ميلادهم	come out **of**	

Countries

Egypt	مصر	South Africa	جنوب أفريقيا
USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	Holland	هولندا
Britain	بريطانيا	India	الهند
China	الصين	Brazil	البرازيل

Definitions تعريفات

- **adults** : fully grown people, not children
- **blow out** : to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame
- **breath** : the air that comes out of your mouth
- **noodles** : a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs
- **guests** : people you invite to your home

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
guess	يُخَمِّن	guessed
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
include	يشمل	included
invite	يدعو (يعزم)	invited
produce	يُنتِج	produced
measure	يقيس	measured

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
give	يُعطِي	gave
make	يصنع	made
leave	يترك	left
show	يُظهِر - يُبَيِّن	showed
become	يُصبح	became
get	يحصل على	got
sing	يُغَنِّي	sang
read	يقرأ	read

Tip!



To match headings to paragraphs in a text, look for key words first. What is the topic of the key words in each paragraph? Then look at the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics?

لمطابقة العناوين بالفقرات في نصٍّ ما، ابحث عن الكلمات الرئيسية أولًا. ما هو موضوع الكلمات الرئيسية في كل فقرة؟ ثم انظر إلى العناوين. هل هناك كلمات مُطابِقة لها أو تتحدث عن نفس المواضيع؟

Read and learn

Birthdays around the world

1. Our birthday celebrations:

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age ❶. We often have parties ❷ with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.



❶ لتُظهر أعمارهم
❷ حفلات

2. Birthdays are not just for children:

What about in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is usual ❸ to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even ❹ when they are adults. People often give other people birthday cards too, especially ❺ on important birthdays. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, and 15.



❸ من المعتاد
❹ حتى
❺ خصوصًا - خاصةً



3. Candles and cakes:

Children everywhere like **party food** ❻. This often includes ❼ small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with **one breath** ❽ ! But in India, the candles **are left to burn** ❾. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give **the first piece** ❿ of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family? That's their mom and dad! In India too, the birthday child gives cake to **all the guests** ⓫ at their party first, before they have some themselves.



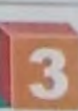
❻ طعام الحفلات
❼ يتضمن، يشمل
❽ نفس واحد
❾ تُترك لتحترق
❿ القطعة الأولى
⓫ كل الضيوف

4. A longer life:

Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long **noodles** ⓬ or **peaches** ⓭ on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you **a long life** ⓮. And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!



⓬ نودلز (مكرونة صينية)
⓭ خوخ
⓮ حياة مديدة (طويلة)

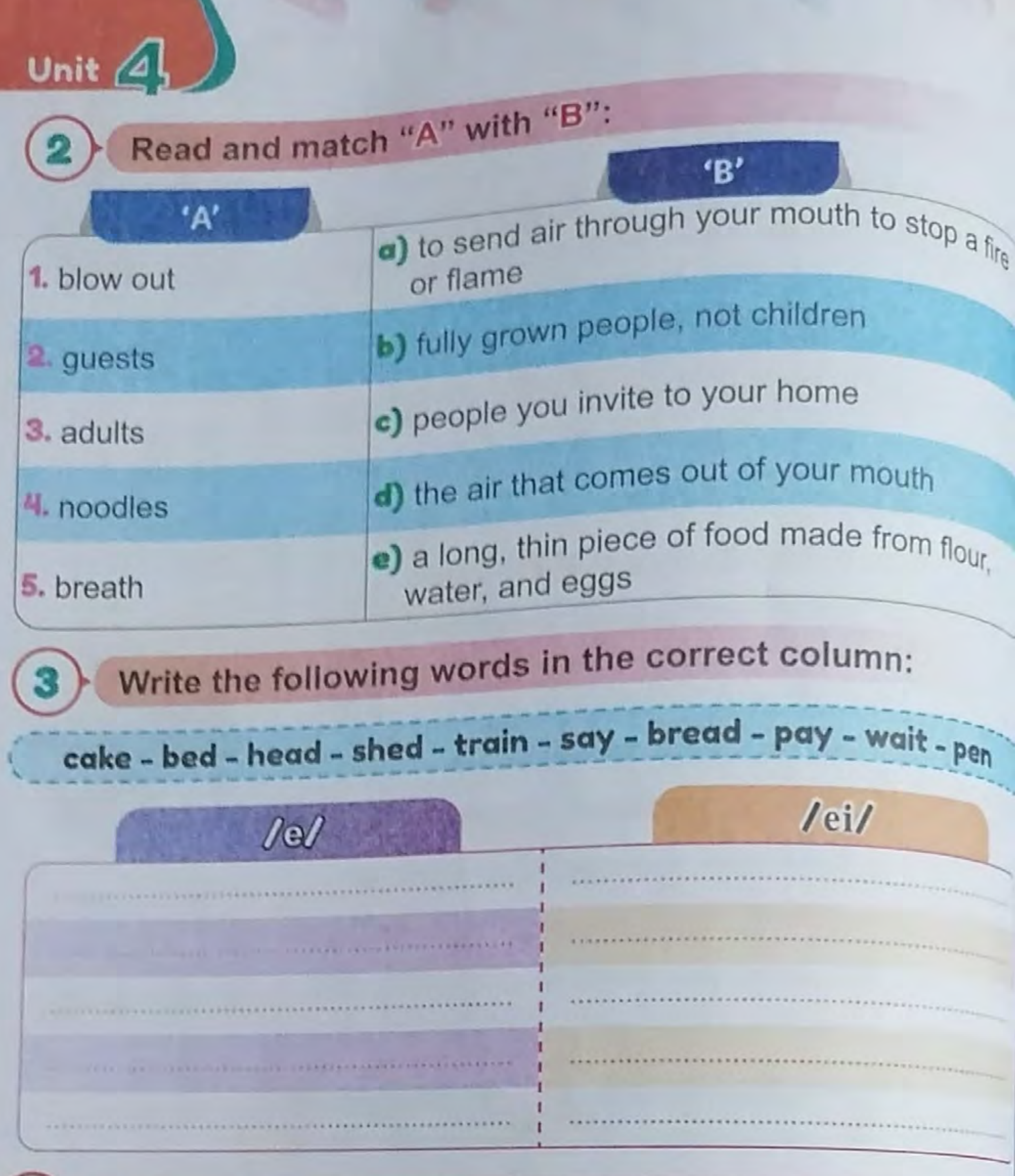


Exercises on Lesson 3

1 **Read and complete the text with the words from the box:**

parties - cakes - celebrated - present - candles

Birthdays are ① .... all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put ② .... on them to show their age. We often have ③ .... with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a ④ .... too.



2 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. blow out	a) to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame
2. guests	b) fully grown people, not children
3. adults	c) people you invite to your home
4. noodles	d) the air that comes out of your mouth
5. breath	e) a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs

3 Write the following words in the correct column:

cake - bed - head - shed - train - say - bread - pay - wait - pen

/e/	/ei/
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. Is this the (main - men) paragraph in the text?
2. I think the tools are in the (shed - shade).
3. I want to (sail - sell) a boat!
4. I (met - mate) my friend Gameela at elementary school.
5. Hany has a (pain - pen) in his foot.



5 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family: their mom and dad!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. In many countries, children like to (blow up - blow out - hang up) the candles on their birthday cakes.
2. In India, the (presents - cakes - candles) are left to burn.

B Answer these questions:

3. What do children like everywhere?
▶ ....
4. What do they do in Brazil when it is a child's birthday?
▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. birthday - often - People - give - cards - other people.
▶ ....
2. we - usually - do - birthday parties - Who - invite to?
▶ .... ?
3. food - Children - everywhere- party - like.
▶ ....
4. interesting - the most - Which - is - tradition - birthday?
▶ .... ?
5. countries - food - Some - birthday - different - have.
▶ ....
6. birthdays - in your family - celebrate - you - How - do?
▶ .... ?
7. like - blow - Children - to - the candles - out.
▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what do we do in egypt
   ▶ ....
2. in the usa and britain, it is usual to give presents on birthdays
   ▶ ....
3. who gets the first piece of birthday cake in india
   ▶ ....
4. how old are chinese children when they are born
   ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your British friend Jane:

Tell her about the traditions of celebrating birthdays in your country, Egypt. Your email address is nada@school.net. And your friend's email address is jane@hotmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
................,
....



Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

Part 1 Writing

English	Arabic
Mother's Day celebration	احتفال عيد الأم
local community	مجتمع محلي
attend	يحضر
confirm	يؤكد
is addressed to	موجهة إلى
receive	يستلم - يتلقى
reply (n)	رَدّ - إجابة
special day	يوم مميز

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Part 2 Project

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
Book Day Party	حفل يوم الكتاب	figure out	يعرف - يكتشف
dress up	يرتدي ملابس تنكرية - يرتدي ملابس أنيقة	costume	زيّ
character	شخصية	amazing prize	جائزة مُذهلة

Synonyms مرادفات

Word	Synonym
attend	: come to
confirm	: say yes or no
celebration	: party

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
help	يساعد	helped
attend	يَحضُر - يشارك	attended
confirm	يُؤَكِّد	confirmed
organize	يُنَظِّم	organized

Present		Past
receive	يستقبل-يتلقى-يستلم	received
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
invite	يدعو (شخص لشيء)	invited
reply	يرد	replied



Read and learn

From : celebrationgroup@binhaddouschool.com

To : Mr Ahmed Hegazy

Subject : Mother's Day Celebration

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day ❶ celebration ❷ this year. We are organizing a special day ❸ for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below ❹). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community ❺ who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Date: Sunday March 21

Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm

Location: School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above

Please reply by February 20 to confirm ❻ if you can attend ❼ the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal

❶ عيد الأم
❷ احتفال
❸ يوم خاص
❹ التفاصيل بالأسفل
❺ المجتمع المحلي - السكان المحليون
❻ لتؤكد
❼ تحضر - تشارك





Tip!

We use formal language when we speak or write to people we don't know very well. We use polite language and correct spelling and grammar in formal writing.

نستخدم لغة رسمية عندما نتحدث مع أشخاص لا نعرفهم جيدًا أو عندما نكتب لهم ونستخدم لغة مهذبة وإملاء وقواعد لغوية صحيحَين في الكتابة الرسمية.

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. annual	a) say yes or no
2. attend	b) party
3. celebration	c) come to
4. confirm	d) every year

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. invite - Mother's Day - celebration - I - to my school's - you.

▶ ....

2. are - a - day - special - organizing - We.

▶ ....

3. inviting - from - community - local - people - We are.

▶ ....

4. your friends - with - Did - enjoy - you - your time?

▶ .... ?

5. We - party - for - have - the - tickets.

▶ ....

6. I - go to - to - want - zoo - the.

▶ ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

From : celebrationgroup@binhaddouschool.com
To : Mr Ahmed Hegazy
Subject : Mother's Day Celebration

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Date: Sunday March 21
Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm
Location: School Hall
RSVP in writing to the email address above
Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I am writing to (invite - work - call) you to our school's Mother's Day celebration.
2. The event is on (Friday - Sunday - Wednesday) March 21.

B Answer these questions:

3. Who is the invitation addressed to?
▶ ....
4. When does Randa ask to receive Mr Ahmed's reply?
▶ ....

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. we very much hope you can attend
   ▶ ....
2. no you can t share these documents with anyone
   ▶ ....
3. marcel koller is a successful coach
   ▶ ....
4. who s your favorite actor
   ▶ ....
5. i enjoy my time with my friends a lot
   ▶ ....

5 Write a formal invitation of 50 words:

You are having a celebration in your school or community. Use Randa's email to help you. Remember to include a subject heading, the name of the person you are inviting, and information about:

Ideas to help you:

- what the celebration is for
- where it is
- when it is (time and date)
- when the person has to reply

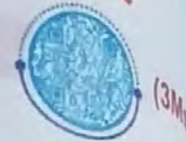
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Test 7 on Unit 4

خاص بالأزهر الشريف



Total 25



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3M)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. In Egypt, we usually make birthday (food - fruit - cakes).
2. The children usually get a/an (age - present - candle).
3. We often have parties with a lot of (family - boys - girls) and friends.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3M)

party - playlist - fireworks - invitations

Youssef : Hi Amina. What are you doing?

Amina : Hi Youssef. I'm sending everyone email ....

Youssef : Good idea.

Hany : Who's choosing the music for the party?

Amina : We can ask Dalida to make a .... And we need to find someone for the fireworks.

Youssef : Yes, Nesma loves them. We need an adult to let off the .... in the yard. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4M)

1. She is (wears - wore - wearing) a white dress.
2. (Do - Am - Is - Are) you washing the glasses?
3. They are blowing up some (streamers - balloons - invitations) for the party.
4. We (play - played - are playing) football at the moment.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

My name is Ahmed. In the summer, I have a lot of free time to enjoy in Alexandria. In the afternoon, I love going to the beach and feeling the cool water on my skin. Swimming is so much fun, and I can spend hours splashing around (يرش الماء) with my friends. We build sandcastles and play beach volleyball, too. In the evening, I like to explore the city. I often go to parks, stores, restaurants or cafes.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Ahmed enjoys his free time in (Hurghada - Alexandria - Matrouh).
2. Ahmed loves feeling the (hot - warm - cool) water on his skin.

B Answer these questions:

3. What does Ahmed do on the beach? ▶ ....
4. What does Ahmed do in the evening? ▶ ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. drinking - We're - juice - orange - the beach - on. ▶ ....
2. Birthday - are - the same - not - everywhere - celebrations. ▶ ....
3. have - you - the - Do - term - exams? ▶ .... ?

6 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- i helped nada decorate the birthday cake ▶ ....

7 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"How do you spend your free time?"

Ideas to help you:

read - play football - go shopping - park - watch TV

....

....

....

Test 8 on Unit 4

Total 30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Children like to (blow out - burn - breathe - eat) the candles on their birthday cakes.
2. In (Nigeria - Brazil - China - India), the candles are left to burn.
3. It is good to blow out the candles with one (cake - breath - party - birthday).

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. I'm studing hard for .... !
2. I'm going running every morning in the ....
3. Aser is organizing a .... at his house.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. They (are enjoying - enjoy - doesn't enjoy - aren't enjoying) their vacation. The hotel they are staying in is very noisy.
2. I am not (organize - organizes - organizing - organized) my sister's party.
3. Where is she (goes - go - going - went)?
4. Is Khaled (writing - write - writes - wrote) the invitation?

4 Read and match "A" with "B": (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. We need an adult to	a) people give you presents.
2. When it's your birthday,	b) making the cake.
3. Do you often go to birthday parties?	c) let off the fireworks.
4. Mariam is not	d) our school's Mother's Day celebration.
5. I am writing to invite you to	e) Yes, I do my homework well.
	f) No, I don't.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

It's July 7th. Today, Sally is seventeen years old. She's wearing a pretty new dress. It's blue and white. Sally is having a party today and she's expecting all her friends to come. <u>They</u> are going to arrive at Sally's house soon.

They are going to bring many beautiful presents with them.
Sally is putting up decorations. She's hanging some balloons, lanterns and paper chains that she has made. Sally's mother has prepared special things to eat and drink. Sally and her friends are going to play games, light candles, eat and drink. They are going to have a wonderful time together.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Next year, Sally will be (seventeen - eighteen - nineteen - twenty) years old.
2. Sally has a birthday party every (fall - winter - summer - spring).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
4. What has Sally's mother prepared?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (4Ms)

1. you - many years - hope - We - for - live. ▶ ....
2. I - on - am - a new - working - project. ▶ ....
3. the event - are - on Friday - organizing - We - for. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- do people in egypt play games at birthday parties ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) to your friend Jasmine: (5Ms)

Invite her to your school's annual celebration this year. Tell her all the necessary details: date, time, location ...etc. Your email address is Jana101@yahoo.com. And your friend's email address is Jasmine@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....



Unit 5 Amazing Journeys

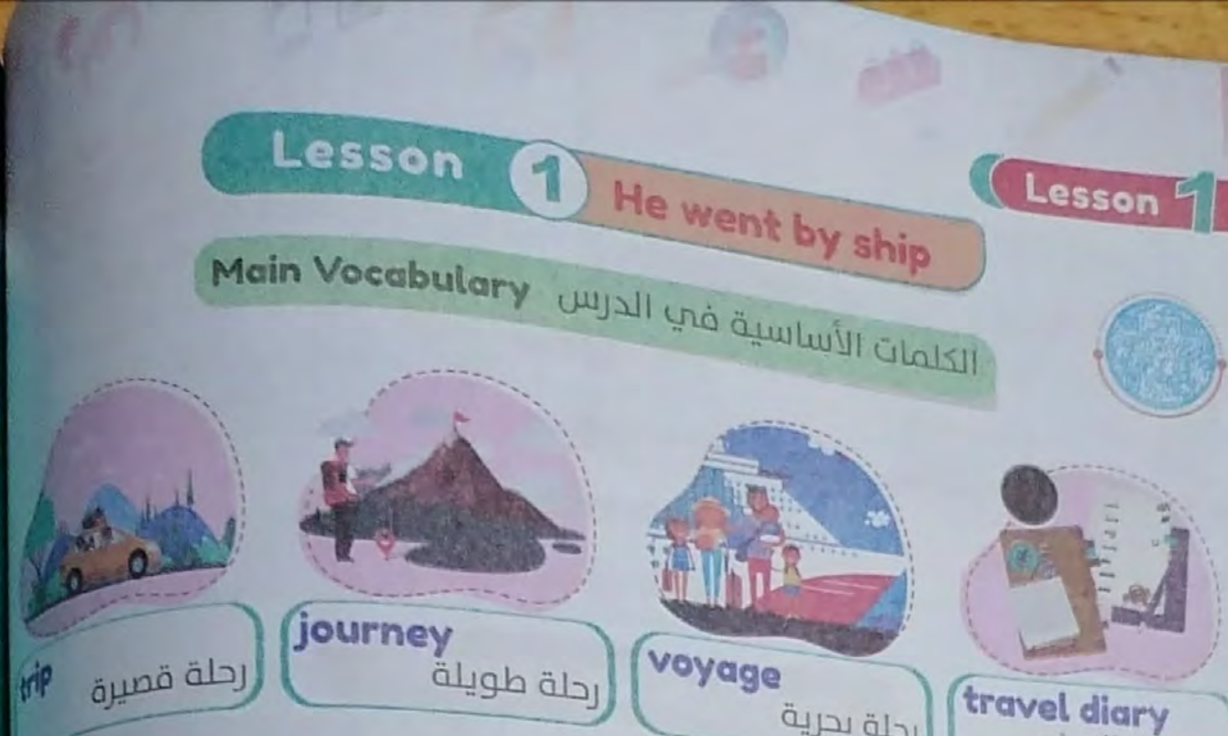
رحلات مذهلة

In this unit I will ....

- listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the past.
- talk about things that happened in the past using common irregular verbs.
- understand the difference between the sounds /ʤ/ and /ʒ/.
- understand specific details in a text.
- write a diary entry to express feelings and mood.
- research and make a poster about a famous traveler.

Lesson 1 He went by ship

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



- **trip** رحلة قصيرة
- **journey** رحلة طويلة
- **voyage** رحلة بحرية
- **travel diary** يوميات السفر



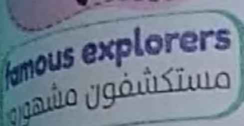












- **famous explorers** مستكشفون مشهورون
- **traveler** مسافر - رحّالة
- **adventure** مغامرة
- **experiences** تجارب - خبرات

Expressions & Prepositions

go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة قصيرة	get to	يصل إلى
go on a journey	يذهب في رحلة طويلة	arrive in	يصل إلى
go on a voyage	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	far away	بعيدًا
ride on a camel	يركب جملًا	on vacation	في عطلة - في إجازة
sail by ship	يُبْحِر بالسفينة	by sea	بحرًا - عبر البحر
travel by train	يسافر بالقطار	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
across the desert	عَبْر الصحراء	on an island	على جزيرة
in the 13th century	في القرن الثالث عشر	come to life	تعود للحياة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Places and Countries أماكن ودول

Croatia	كرواتيا	China	الصين
Marco Polo museum	متحف ماركو بولو	Venice	مدينة البندقية (فينيسيا)
Korcula Island	جزيرة كوركولا	Iran	إيران
Hormuz	مَضِيق هُرْمُز	Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked	call	يُسَمِّي	called
discuss	يُنَاقِش	discussed	travel	يسافر	traveled
listen	يستمع	listened	sail	يُبْحِر	sailed
want	يريد	wanted	stop	يتوقَّف - يُوْقِف	stopped
remember	يتذكَّر	remembered	imagine	يتصوَّر - يتخيَّل	imagined
visit	يزور	visited	arrive	يَصِل	arrived

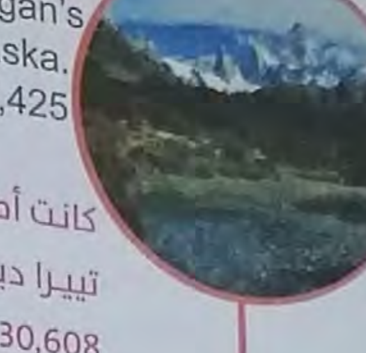
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	think	يُفَكِّر	thought
do	يفعل	did	take	يأخذ	took
know	يعرف	knew	write	يكتب	wrote
read	يقرأ	read	get to	يصل إلى	got to
fly	يطير	flew	can	يستطيع	could
ride	يركب	rode	come	يأتي	came

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The longest journey on foot was George Meegan's walk from Tierra Del Fuego in Argentina to Alaska. It was 30,608 km long, and he completed it in 2,425 days between 1977 and 1983.

كانت أطول رحلة على الأقدام هي رحلة شيْر جورج ميجان من تييرا ديل فويجو في الأرجنتين إلى ألاسكا. كان طول الرحلة 30,608 كم، وأكملها في 2,425 يومًا بين عامَي 1977 و1983



Read and learn



Rana : What are you reading, Injy?

Injy : Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember my family's vacation in Croatia a few years ago.

Rana : That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

Injy : I think it was visiting the Marco Polo Museum.

Rana : Really? Where is that?

Injy : It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula. We took a trip there. It's a really interesting museum - all about the travels of Marco Polo.

Rana : Who was Marco Polo?

Injy : He was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo.*

Rana : How did people get to China in those days? It's very far away. You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!

Injy : It was very difficult - the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

Rana : Wow, what an adventure!

Injy : Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 800 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

رنا : ماذا تقرئين يا إنجي؟

إنجي : أهلًا يا رنا. إنها يوميات السفر الخاصة بي. أريد أن أتذكر عُطلة عائلتي في كرواتيا قبل بضع سنوات.

رنا : هذه فكرة جيدة. ماذا كان الشيء المفضل بالنسبة لكِ في العطلة؟

إنجي : أعتقد أنها كانت زيارة متحف ماركو بولو.

رنا : حقًّا؟ أين يتواجد؟

إنجي : إنه على جزيرة في كرواتيا تسمى كوركولا. لقد قمنا برحلة إلى هناك. إنه متحف مثير للاهتمام حقًا - يحتوي على كل ما يتعلق بأسفار ماركو بولو.

رنا : من كان ماركو بولو؟

إنجي : كان مستكشفًا إيطاليًا ومن أوائل الأشخاص الذين زاروا الصين من الغرب. لقد ذهب إلى هناك في القرن الثالث عشر وكتب يوميات عن تجاربه. وتسمّى هذه اليوميات "أسفار ماركو بولو".

رنا : كيف كان الناس يذهبون إلى الصين في تلك الأيام؟ إنها بعيدة جدًا. ولم يكن يمكنك حينها الذهاب إلى هناك بالطائرة أو السفر بالقطار!

إنجي : كان الأمر صعبًا للغاية - لقد استغْرَقَت الرحلة سنوات! ذهب ماركو بولو في رحلة بحرية طويلة. أبحر بالسفينة من البندقية (فينيسيا) إلى كوركولا، ومنها إلى إيران. عندما وصل إلى مضيق هرمز، توقف وشقّ طريقه عبر الصحراء،وركب جملًا طوال الطريق إلى الصين!

رنا : واو، يا لها من مغامرة!

إنجي : نعم، وتخيلي الوصول إلى الصين منذ ما يقرب من 800 عام! كان الأمر مختلفًا جدًا حينها. لقد احتوى المتحف على الكثير من الأشياء من الصين القديمة. لقد جعل المتحف قصة ماركو بولو تعود إلى الحياة فعلًا.

Lesson 1

The lesson notes

■ Marco Polo sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran.

■ أبحر ماركو بولو من فينيسيا إلى كوركولا، ثم إلى إيران.

■ حرف الجر "on" في هذه الجملة يعطي معنى الاستمرار، وهذا المعنى من ضمن استخداماته.

read on	إستمر في (واصل) القراءة	play on	إستمر في (واصل) اللعب
speak on	إستمر في (واصل) الحديث	go on	إستمر - واصل

ملحوظة: التعبير "go on" يعطي معنى "إستمر" أو "واصل أي شيء تفعله".

arrive in يصل إلى

○ يصل إلى مكان غير محدد (كبير)، كمدينة أو دولة مثلاً.

▶ The tourists arrived in Cairo (Egypt) at 10 o'clock.

arrive at يصل إلى

○ يصل إلى مكان محدد (صغير)، أي نحدد المكان الذي وصل إليه الشخص في المدينة مثلاً.

▶ The tourists arrived at Cairo Airport at 10 o'clock.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. Who was Marco Polo?	a) his experiences.
2. He wrote a diary about	b) voyage by sea.
3. What's your favorite	c) on foot.
4. Marco Polo went on a long	d) all the way to China!
5. He rode a camel	e) thing about the vacation?
	f) He was an Italian explorer.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

vacation - museum - reading - island - century

Rana : What are you ...., Injy?

Injy : Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember my family's .... in Croatia a few years ago.

Rana : That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

Injy : I think it was visiting the Marco Polo ....

Rana : Really? Where is that?

Injy : It's on an .... called Korcula. We took a trip there. It's a really interesting museum all about the travels of Marco Polo.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the west to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo*. It was very difficult - the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Marco Polo was an Italian (king - explorer - inventor).
2. When he got to Hormuz, he rode a (bike - horse - camel) all the way to China.

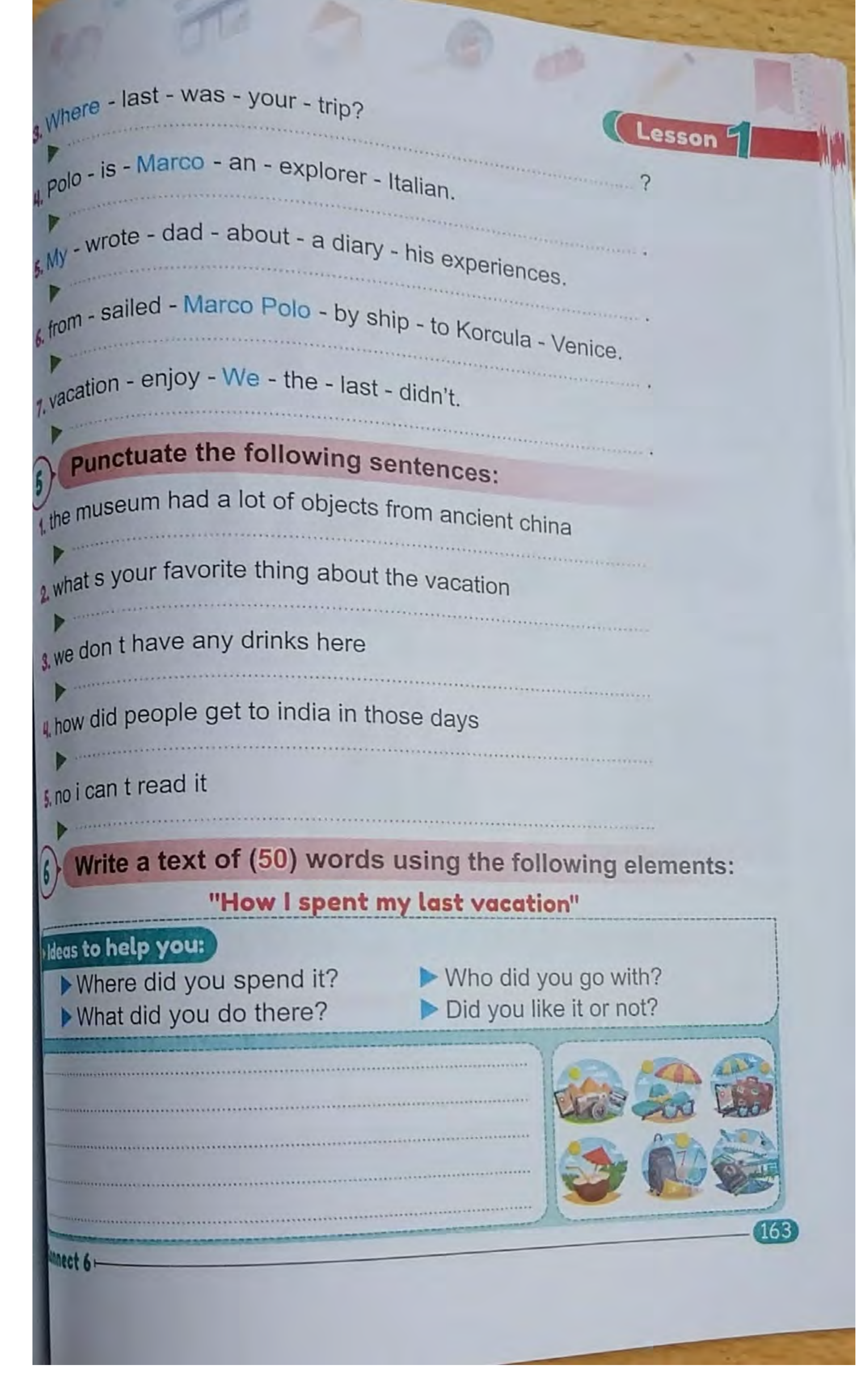
B Answer these questions:

3. When did Marco Polo visit China? ▶ ....
4. What's his diary called? ▶ ....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. I - Dahab - went to - with - grandparents - my.
▶ ....

2. go to - I - with - Hurghada - family - my.
▶ ....



3. Where - last - was - your - trip?

▶ .... ?

4. Polo - is - Marco - an - explorer - Italian.

▶ ....

5. My - wrote - dad - about - a diary - his experiences.

▶ ....

6. from - sailed - Marco Polo - by ship - to Korcula - Venice.

▶ ....

7. vacation - enjoy - We - the - last - didn't.

▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. the museum had a lot of objects from ancient china

▶ ....

2. what s your favorite thing about the vacation

▶ ....

3. we don t have any drinks here

▶ ....

4. how did people get to india in those days

▶ ....

5. no i can t read it

▶ ....

6 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"How I spent my last vacation"

Ideas to help you:

- Where did you spend it?
- Who did you go with?
- What did you do there?
- Did you like it or not?

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 5

Lesson 2 A surprising discovery

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

discovery	اكتشاف
clay	فخار - صلصال - طيني
large eyes	عيون كبيرة
iron farming tools	أدوات زراعة حديدية
stone	حجرية - حجارة
advanced culture	ثقافة متقدمة
inspiration	إلهام
civilization	حضارة
archaeologists	علماء آثار
sculptures	تماثيل - منحوتات
famous works	أعمال مشهورة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

incredible	لا يُصَدَّق - مُذْهِل - مدهش	beautiful art	
mystery	لغز	famous for	
sitting position	وضعية جلوس	quality	
Ife People	شعب الإيفي (قبائل من غرب إفريقيا)	complicated hair styles	تسريحات شعر مجدولة (مَضْفُورَة)
humans	شخصيات بشرية	development	تطوُّر

Lesson 2

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
mention	يَذْكُر	mentioned
learn	يتعلّم	learned

Present		Past
believe	يُصَدِّق - يُؤْمِن	believed
agree	يوافق	agreed

Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

archaeologist	: a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground
tools	: objects we use to make or do things
clay	: a type of earth that is sticky when wet
advanced	: modern or well developed
inspiration	: an example others use to help create new ideas
sculptures	: art made from stone or wood
mystery	: something that people do not understand or cannot explain

A surprising discovery



Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible.



A team of archaeologists went to the area to find out more. They found many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very advanced culture from around 500 BCE to 200 CE. It was a civilization which had the ability to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful art.

They called this culture the "Nok" civilization, after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures were the inspiration for the famous works of art by the later Ife people, who were in Nigeria from the 11th to the 15th century CE. The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information about the Nok people, so we can only learn about them from their art. Their culture is still a mystery today.

اكتشاف مفاجئ

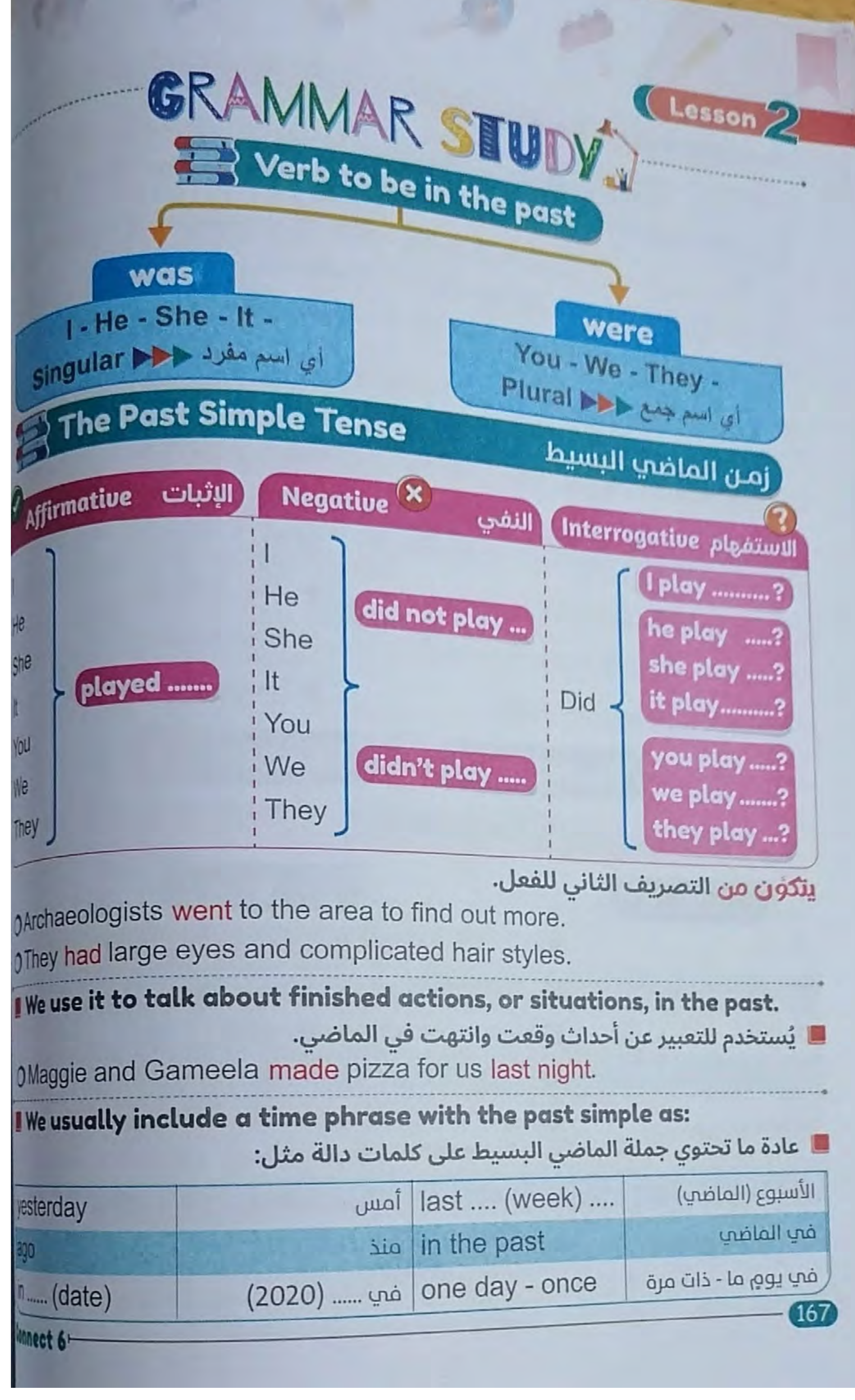


منذ ما يقرب من 100 عام، وجد السكان المحليون في قرية نوك الصغيرة في نيجيريا، وهي دولة تقع في غرب إفريقيا، بعض الأشياء غير العادية تحت الأرض. كانت تلك الأشياء عبارة عن منحوتات (تماثيل منحوتة) طينية جميلة لشخصيات بشرية. كانت جميع المنحوتات بنفس الأسلوب: كانت لها عيون كبيرة وتسريحات شعر مجدولة (مُضَفَّرَة). وكانت معظمها في وضعية الجلوس وأيديها على ركبها. كانت جودة النحت مدهشة.

ذهب فريق من علماء الآثار إلى المنطقة لاكتشاف المزيد، ووجدوا العديد من المنحوتات المماثلة في منطقة تبلغ مساحتها مئات الكيلومترات حول نوك. وكانت هناك أيضًا أدوات زراعة حديدية وحجرية. اتفق علماء الآثار على أن هذه الأشياء كانت على الأغلب من ثقافة متقدمة جدًا من حوالي سنة 500 قبل الميلاد إلى سنة 200 بعد الميلاد. لقد كانت حضارة لديها القدرة على تشكيل الحديد والحجارة لصنع الأدوات، وصنعت فنًّا جميلًا.



لقد أطلقوا على هذه الثقافة اسم حضارة "نوك"، نسبةً إلى القرية التي عُثِرَ فيها على المنحوتات. يعتقد البعض أن تلك المنحوتات كانت مصدر الإلهام للأعمال الفنية الشهيرة لشعب الإيفي اللاحقين، الذين كانوا في نيجيريا من القرن الحادي عشر الميلادي إلى القرن الخامس عشر الميلادي. اشتهر شعب الإيفي بصنع منحوتات معدنية جميلة لرؤوس بشرية. ومع ذلك، لا توجد معلومات مكتوبة عن شعب نوك، لذلك لا يمكننا التعرُّف عليهم إلا من خلال أعمالهم الفنية. لا تزال ثقافتهم غامضة حتى اليوم.



GRAMMAR STUDY

Verb to be in the past

was

I - He - She - It -
Singular ▶▶▶ أي اسم مفرد

were

You - We - They -
Plural ▶▶▶ أي اسم جمع

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات

I / He / She / It / You / We / They → played ....

Negative النفي

I / He / She / It / You / We / They → did not play ... / didn't play .....

Interrogative الاستفهام

Did → I play ....? / he play .....? / she play .....? / it play..........? / you play .....? / we play ....? / they play ...?

يتكوّن من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

- Archaeologists went to the area to find out more.
- They had large eyes and complicated hair styles.

We use it to talk about finished actions, or situations, in the past.

يُستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت وانتهت في الماضي.

- Maggie and Gameela made pizza for us last night.

We usually include a time phrase with the past simple as:

عادة ما تحتوي جملة الماضي البسيط على كلمات دالة مثل:

yesterday	أمس	last .... (week)	الأسبوع (الماضي)
ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي
in ...... (date)	في ...... (2020)	one day - once	في يوم ما - ذات مرة

- Ancient Egyptians built the pyramids thousands of years ago.
- I met my friend Samy yesterday.

- **In the negative form, we use (didn't) before the infinitive without "to".**

ننفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

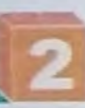
- He didn't go out with his friends last weekend.
- She didn't eat all her sandwiches. She wasn't hungry.

- **To make questions in the past simple we use (Did) + the subject + the infinitive without "to".**

عند عمل سؤال على الماضي البسيط، نبدأ السؤال بـ (Did) أو نضعها بعد أداة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

- Did you read about "Nok" civilization? ▶ No, I didn't.
- Did she ride her bike last Friday? ▶ Yes, she did.
- What did they do in the morning? ▶ They worked in the garden.
- Where did he go last week? ▶ He went to the park.

Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. clay	a) objects we use to make or do things
2. inspiration	b) art made from stone or wood
3. tools	c) modern or well developed
4. sculptures	d) a type of earth that is sticky when wet
5. advanced	e) a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground.
6. archaeologist	f) an example others use to help create new ideas
7. mystery	g) something that people do not understand or cannot explain

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

clay – iron – Nigeria – culture – archaeologists

The area where the Nok people lived was in ① .... People found sculptures in this area, and ② .... went there to study them. The Nok ③ .... was advanced, and its people made sculptures from ④ .... , and tools from stone and iron. Their sculptures were usually of humans.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

found – went – go – weren't – was – had

Sameh : How was your trip, Karim?

Karim : It .... really good, thanks. We .... to the Western Desert.

Sameh : Wow! Did you .... with your parents?

Karim : No, I was with my uncle. We .... some very nice places.

Sameh : Were there any other children on the trip?

Karim : No, there .... But I .... fun!

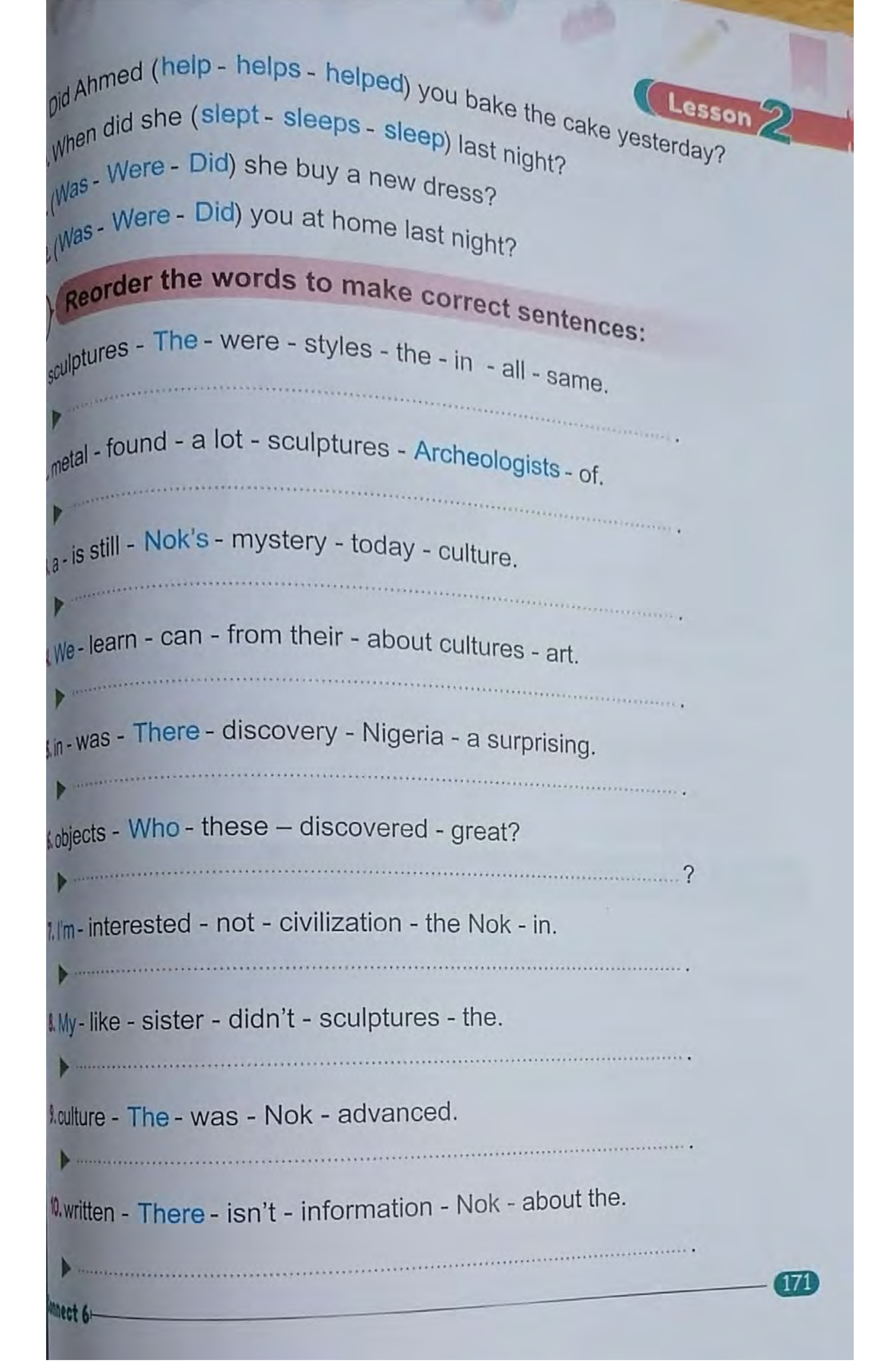
4 Choose the correct answer: was – were

1. I (am - was - weren't) in Paris last month.
2. Mohamed Aboutrika (was - were - weren't) a good player.
3. The children (were - weren't - wasn't) in the classroom. They were in the lab.
4. Merna and I (are - was - were) in the same class last year.
5. The town (were - was - weren't) quiet ten years ago.
6. My grandpa (wasn't - isn't - was) a doctor. He was a teacher.

7. (Was - Were) you tired? ▶ Yes, I (were - wasn't - was).
8. (Was - Were) they from Italy? ▶ No, they (aren't - weren't - were).
9. Was there a beach? ▶ Yes, there (were - was - wasn't).
10. (Was - Were) Sara there? ▶ No, she (isn't - were - wasn't).

5 Choose the correct answer: Past Simple

1. He (live - lived - lives) in Rome long ago.
2. My sister (tidied - tidy - tidies) her room yesterday.
3. He (brought - was bring - bring) me a bouquet of flowers.
4. The wind (blow - blows - blew) hard yesterday.
5. The tourists (doesn't speak - didn't speak - speaks) Spanish.
6. They (enjoy - enjoyed - enjoys) their trip last year.
7. (Does - Is - Did) he catch the bus? No, he (did - don't - didn't).
8. Everybody (watched - was watch - watch) the match.
9. Amina (doesn't - don't - didn't) clean the bathroom yesterday.
10. The car (was stop - stop - stopped) at the lights.
11. Did they (swim - swam - swims) on Saturday?
    ▶ Yes, they (did - don't - didn't).
12. My mom (bought - is buying - buys) me a new T-shirt last week.
13. She didn't (got up - gets up - get up) early yesterday.
14. (Are - Do - Did) archeologists find any artifacts last year?
15. Al Ahly didn't (played - plays - play) well last night.
16. Many people (come - came - comes) to my wedding two days ago.
17. Did he (go - goes - went) to the park last weekend?
18. My friends (doesn't finish - aren't finish - didn't finish) their homework.



Did Ahmed (help - helps - helped) you bake the cake yesterday?

When did she (slept - sleeps - sleep) last night?

(Was - Were - Did) she buy a new dress?

(Was - Were - Did) you at home last night?

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. sculptures - The - were - styles - the - in - all - same.

▶ ....

2. metal - found - a lot - sculptures - Archeologists - of.

▶ ....

3. a - is still - Nok's - mystery - today - culture.

▶ ....

4. We - learn - can - from their - about cultures - art.

▶ ....

5. in - was - There - discovery - Nigeria - a surprising.

▶ ....

6. objects - Who - these – discovered - great?

▶ .... ?

7. I'm - interested - not - civilization - the Nok - in.

▶ ....

8. My - like - sister - didn't - sculptures - the.

▶ ....

9. culture - The - was - Nok - advanced.

▶ ....

10. written - There - isn't - information - Nok - about the.

▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. there was a discovery in the small village of nok in nigeria, a country in west africa
   ▶ ....
2. can you help me please
   ▶ ....
3. yes she did
   ▶ ....
4. we didn t enjoy our vacation
   ▶ ....
5. when did hatem have his lunch
   ▶ ....
6. my parents weren t at the party yesterday
   ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Haitham:

Tell him what you and your family did last week. Your email address is fayez@yahoo.com. And your friend's email is haitham@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....

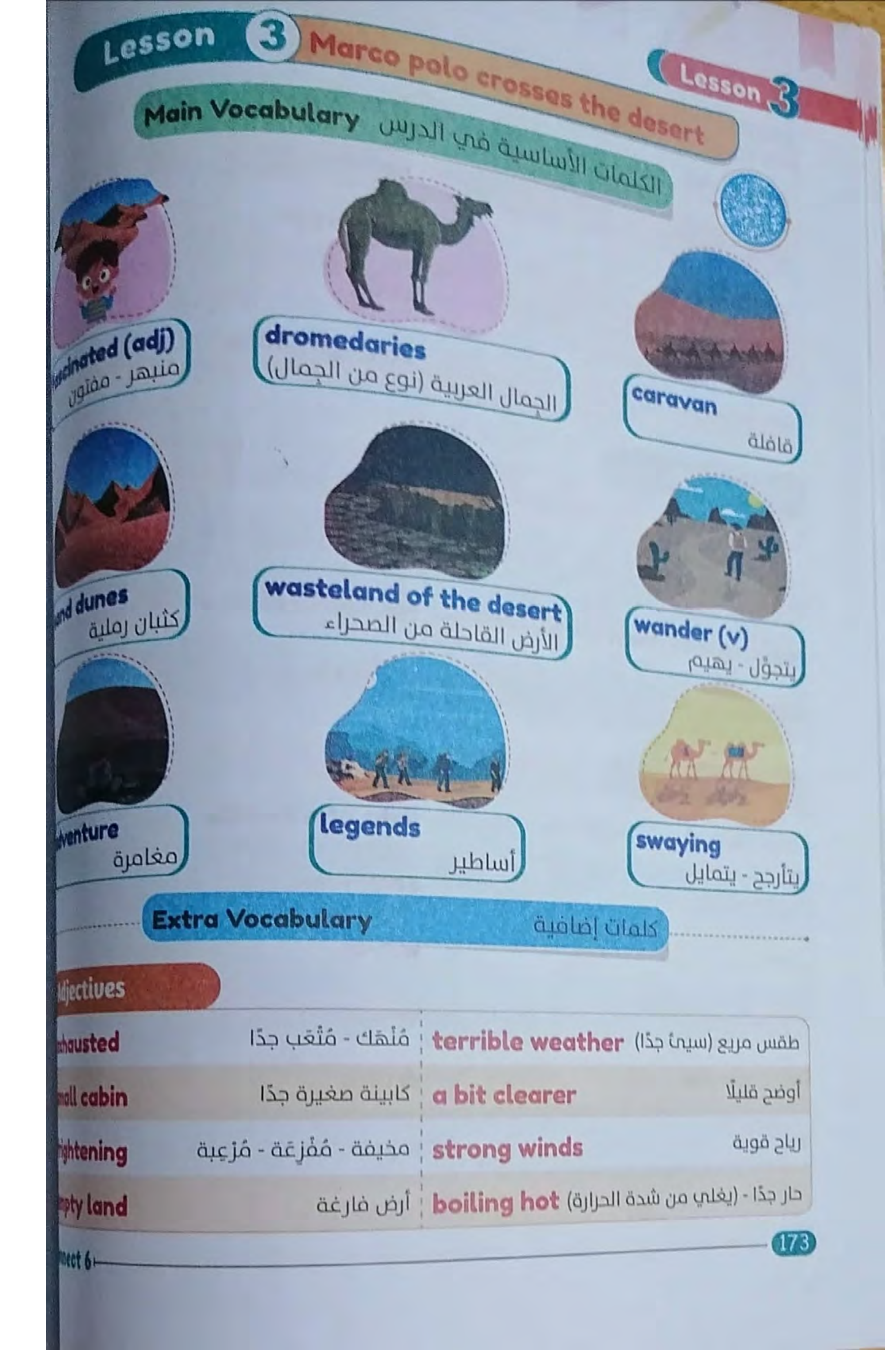
....

....

....

....................,

....



Lesson 3 Marco polo crosses the desert

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

- **scinated (adj)** منبهر - مفتون
- **dromedaries** الجمال العربية (نوع من الجمال)
- **caravan** قافلة
- **nd dunes** كثبان رملية
- **wasteland of the desert** الأرض القاحلة من الصحراء
- **wander (v)** يتجوّل - يهيم
- **venture** مغامرة
- **legends** أساطير
- **swaying** يتأرجح - يتمايل

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

djectives

hausted	مُنْهَك - مُتْعَب جدًا	**terrible weather**	طقس مريع (سيئ جدًا)
all cabin	كابينة صغيرة جدًا	**a bit clearer**	أوضح قليلًا
ightening	مخيفة - مُفْزِعَة - مُزعِبة	**strong winds**	رياح قوية
pty land	أرض فارغة	**boiling hot** (يغلي من شدة الحرارة)	حار جدًا -

Adjectives

boring day	يوم ممل	freezing cold	بارد جدًا - صقيع - برد قارس
long walks	تمشية لمسافات طويلة	possible	ممكن
dangerous	خطير	good news	أخبار جيدة
lost	تائه (ضلّ طريقه)	sad	حزين
mysterious	غامض	strange noises	أصوات غريبة

Prepositions

by day	نهارًا - في النهار	on the horizon	في الأُفُق
by night	ليلاً - في الليل	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية
move up and down	تتحرك صاعدة وهابطة	for the first time	لأول مرة
go on	يستمر - يُوَاصِل	come up	تُشرِق

Other words

Gobi Desert	صحراء جوبي (في الصين)	light of a candle	ضوء شمعة
Noah Oasis	واحة نوح	each step	كل خطوة
port	ميناء	waves	أمواج
telescope	تلسكوب - مِنْظَار	voices	أصوات
local people	سكان محليون	drums	طبول
captain	قبطان	mysterious	غامض

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
roll	تدور - تتدحرج	rolled
sway	يتأرجح - يترنح	swayed
cross	يَعْبُر	crossed
wander	يتجوَّل	wandered
boil	يغلي	boiled
look like	يُشْبِه	looked like

Present		Past
last	يستمر - يدوم	lasted
seem	يبدو	seemed
explore	يستكشف	explored
describe	يَصِف	described
move	يتحرك	moved
imagine	يتخيَّل - يتصوَّر	imagined

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
freeze	يتجمد	froze
say	يقول	said
lose	يتوه - يضل الطريق	lost
leave	يغادر	left

Present		Past
see	يرى	saw
come up	تُشْرِق	came up
feel	يشعر	felt
spend (time)	يقضي (وقت)	spent
write	يكتب	wrote

Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

wandered	: walked about without a direction
wasteland	: a landscape where nothing lives
legend	: a very old and famous story
fascinated by	: very interested in
swaying	: moving from side to side
caravan	: a group of camels and people traveling together

Pronunciation

/dʒ/		/ʒ/	
huge	ضخم	measure (v)	يقيس
fridge	ثلاجة	treasure	كنز
age	عُمْر - سِن	usually	عادةً
joke	نُكتة	leisure	وقت فراغ
dangerous	خطير	Asia	آسيا
language	لغة	television	تليفزيون - تلفاز
bridge	كوبري	pleasure	سرور - بهجة
village	قرية		
damaged (Adj)	تالِف		
Jerry	جيري (اسم)		
just	فقط - للتو		
arranged (v)	مُرتَّب - مُنَسَّق		
luggage	أمتعة السفر		
Japan	اليابان		

The lesson notes

■ There **was** good **news**. ■ كانت هناك أخبارًا جيدة.

○ لاحظ أن كلمة "**news**" منتهية بحرف "**s**" ومعناها باللغة العربية "**أخبار**"، ومع ذلك هذه الكلمة في اللغة الإنجليزية مفردة، وتُعامل معاملة المفرد لأنها اسم لا يُعد، أي ليس له جمع.

▶ That happy **news is** very good to hear.

○ وكذلك كلمة "**information**" معناها باللغة العربية "**معلومات**"، ومع ذلك هذه الكلمة في اللغة الإنجليزية مفردة، وتعامل معاملة المفرد لأنها اسم لا يُعد، أي ليس له جمع.

▶ This **information is** useful. I need it to do my homework.

Marco Polo Crosses The Desert



Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers - no people, no plants, no water.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold - sometimes there was snow. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still...

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

ماركو بولو يعبر الصحراء



كان ماركو بولو في الحادية والعشرين من عمره عندما ذهب إلى صحراء جوبي لأول مرة عام 1275م. كان مفتونًا بالكثبان الرملية التي كانت تتحرك مع كل خطوة تخطوها الجمال. كان ارتفاع بعض الكثبان يبلغ ستين مترًا وتمتد لعشرين مترًا، وكانت أشكالها تتغير باستمرار. تتحرك وتتدحرج بِفِعْل الرياح كأمواج صفراء هائلة. في الواقع، لقد أطلق السكان المحليون على صحراء جوبي اسم "البحر الجاف" في لغتهم.

تحركت الجمال في القافلة ببطء صاعدة وهابطة على الكثبان الرملية، تتمايل كسفن كبيرة فوق المحيط. توجهوا نحو "لوب نور"، القرية الأخيرة قبل أرض الصحراء القاحلة الفارغة. كان ماركو يعرف أنه بعد هذا المكان، لم يكن هناك شيء لآلاف الكيلومترات - لا أناس ولا نباتات ولا ماء.

كان مكانًا غامضًا وخطيرًا. في النهار، كان الجو يغلي من شدة الحرارة، وفي الليل، كان البرد قارسًا - وأحيانًا كان الثلج يتساقط. مضوا في طريقهم (واصلوا طريقهم) بصمت، لكن في كثير من الأحيان كانت الرياح تصدر أصواتًا غريبة، كأصوات تغني وطبول تقرع (تضرب) من بعيد. كان هناك العديد من الأساطير الغريبة عن هذه الصحراء. قال الناس إن المسافرين الذين تاهوا منذ فترة طويلة في تلك الصحراء لا يزالون يتجولون هناك ...

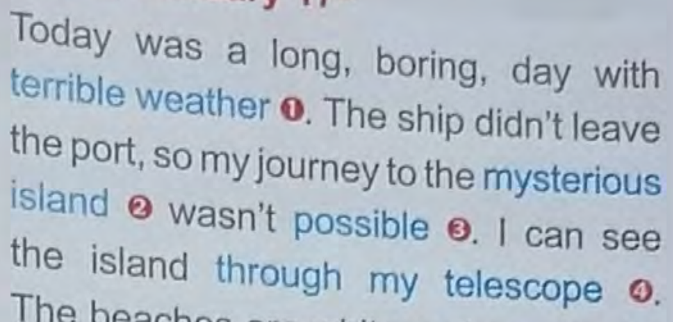
قبل مغادرتهم "لوب نور"، تأكد ماركو من أن لديهم ما يكفي من الطعام والماء للرجال والحيوانات لمدة شهر واحد. بعد ثلاثين يومًا بالضبط من سفرهم عبر تلك الأرض الفارغة المخيفة، رأوا أخيرًا الخط الأخضر لـ "واحة نوح" في الأفق. لم يكن قد تبقى لديهم ماء ولا طعام، وكانت الحيوانات منهكة، لكن مغامرتهم الصحراوية قد انتهت. لقد أصبحوا في الصين!

Listening Script



The mysterious island
الجزيرة الغامضة

Day 1, January 17th



Today was a long, boring, day with terrible weather ❶. The ship didn't leave the port, so my journey to the mysterious island ❷ wasn't possible ❸. I can see the island through my telescope ❹. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees ❺ and there are green mountains at its land center ❻. It's exciting to imagine ❼ what I could find there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.

Day 2, January 19th

I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds ❽. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day ❾. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle ❿ in my small cabin. Today the sky is a bit clearer - there is some hope for my journey, perhaps - but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

Day 3, January 21st

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin ⓫ last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: tomorrow, the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up ⓬. I'm very excited: soon I can explore the mysterious island!

❶ طقس سيئ للغاية
❷ جزيرة غامضة
❸ ممكن
❹ من خلال تليسكوبي
❺ أشجار النخيل
❻ وسط أرضها
❼ تتخيّل
❽ رياح عاتية (شديدة)
❾ لتمضية الوقت خلال النهار
❿ على ضوء شمعة
⓫ في مقصورتي
⓬ تُشرق

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. fascinated by	a) moving from side to side
2. caravan	b) a very old and famous story
3. swaying	c) very interested in
4. wasteland	d) walked about without a direction
5. wandered	e) a group of camels and people traveling together
6. legend	f) a landscape where nothing lives

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

caravan - water - dromedaries - desert - swaying

The ① .... in the ② .... moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the ③ .... Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers - no people, no plants, no ④ ....

3 Write the following words in the correct column:

huge - measure - fridge - treasure - television - Asia - usually - dangerous - joke - age

/dʒ/	/ʒ/
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "fascinated" means (bored - tired - amazed).
2. Some of the dunes were (sixty - forty - twenty) meters long.

B Answer these questions:

3. How old was Marco Polo when he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time? ▶ ....
4. What did the local people call the Gobi Desert?
▶ ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. was - Marco - great - a - traveler - Polo.
▶ ....
2. by - Marco Polo - fascinated - the sand - dunes - was.
▶ ....
3. It - mysterious - is - a - place - and dangerous.
▶ ....
4. dromedaries - What - the - were - like?
▶ ....?

5. leave - The - didn't - port - the - ship.

▶ ....

6. was - I - and down - sad - day - yesterday - all.

▶ ....

7. friends - breakfast - had - my - with - I.

▶ ....

8. explore - I - can - the - island - mysterious!

▶ .... !

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. which egyptian animal does that animal look like

▶ ....

2. i visit my grandparents every friday

▶ ....

3. yes she played football yesterday

▶ ....

4. ahmed zaki was a famous actor

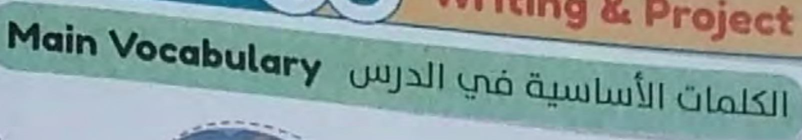
▶ ....

5. we love to read about marco polo

▶ ....

6. my father didn t let me go out

▶ ....



Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



go on a felucca يركب على متن فلوكة



on the River Nile في نهر النيل



sailing boat قارب شراعي



sail (n) (v) شِراع - يُبحِر



the Great Pyramid الهرم الأكبر



warm sunshine أشعة الشمس الدافئة



skills مهارات

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Adjectives

lovely way	طريقة جميلة	amazing experience	تجربة مدهشة
magical	سحري	awesome	مُدهش - مُذهل - رائع
relaxing	مريح	ancient	قديم جدًا
quiet	هادئ	incredible	لا تُصَدَّق - مدهشة
peaceful	مُسالِم - هادئ	wonderful	رائع

Other words

traditional Egyptian music	موسيقى مصرية تراثية	moved gently	كانت تتحرك بهدوء
difficult to sail	من الصعب أن تبحر	along the way	على طول الطريق
life	حياة	on board the felucca	على متن الفلوكة
What a day!	يا له من يوم!	made of	مصنوع من

Tip!

A diary has features that are different from other types of text.

- It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.
- It is usually written in an informal style and uses first person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.).
- It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.
- It usually describes people, places, and experiences.

تحتوي اليوميات على ميزات تختلف عن الأنواع الأخرى من النصوص.

- عادةً ما تحتوي على فقرات قصيرة، كلٌ منها تتحدث عما حدث في يوم واحد.
- عادةً ما تكون مكتوبة بأسلوب غير رسمي وتستخدم ضمائر المتكلم (I, we, my، إلخ).
- عادةً ما تصف أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآرائه.
- عادةً ما تصف الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

6 January



Today, I had an amazing experience … I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful - a lovely way to travel.



We stopped to see some incredible things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome! The pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three pyramids, is 147 meters high It was wonderful.

In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully and the music was magical and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

6 يناير

لقد حظيت بتجربة رائعة اليوم ... لقد ركبت فلوكة في نهر النيل! الفلوكة هي قارب شراعي مصري تقليدي، وهي مصنوعة من الخشب.

كان قبطان القارب رجل طويل يُدعى كريم. إن الإبحار بالفلوكة صعب، لكن كريم كان قويا للغاية ولديه المهارات اللازمة للقيام بذلك. كانت الرحلة مذهلة. لقد أبحرنا ببطء في النهر تحت أشعة الشمس الدافئة. كان للقارب شراعان أبيضان يتحركان بهدوء مع الريح. كانت الأجواء هادئة ومريحة للغاية - طريقة لطيفة للسفر.

توقفنا لرؤية بعض الأشياء المدهشة على طول الطريق أيضًا. رأيت أهرامات الجيزة لأول مرة في حياتي - لقد كانت رائعة! كانت الأهرامات ضخمة وكان لون الحجارة ذهبي. يبلغ ارتفاع الهرم الأكبر أطول الأهرامات الثلاثة، 147 مترًا. لقد كان رائعًا.

بعد الظهر، تناولنا غداء لذيذًا على متن الفلوكة وكان هناك رجل يعزف موسيقى مصرية تراثية على عود. كان يعزف بشكل جميل وكانت الموسيقى ساحرة ومريحة للأعصاب. يا له من يوم! لقد حظيت بتجربة رائعة!

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. I went on a felucca	a) traditional Egyptian sailing boat.
2. The trip	b) of Giza for the first time in my life.
3. The boat had two	c) was amazing.
4. A felucca is a	d) on the River Nile!
5. I saw the Pyramids	e) white sails.
	f) difficult to sail.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Today I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall, serious man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the golden sunshine. We stopped to see some incredible things along the way too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life - they were awesome! The pyramids were huge and the stones were a sort of golden color.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A felucca is made of (metal - wood - plastic).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "difficult" is (hard - wrong - easy).

B Answer these questions:

3. Who was the captain of the felucca?

▶ ....

4. How were the pyramids?

▶ ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. went on - I - on the - a felucca - River Nile!

▶ .... !

2. made - felucca - A - isn't - metal - of.

▶ ....

3. of the - Karim - the - was - captain - boat.

▶ ....

4. felucca - A - is - to - sail - difficult.

▶ ....

5. two - boat - white - had - sails - The.

▶ ....

6. the felucca - We - lunch - board - had - on.

▶ ....

7. a - had - I - experience - wonderful - such!

▶ .... !

8. trip - Did - enjoy - you - the?

▶ .... ?

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i saw the pyramids of giza

▶ ....

2. no he didn't come with us

▶ ....

3. noha amira and rania's birthdays are in december

▶ ....

4. what do you want to eat

▶ ....

5. welcome to egypt

▶ ....

5 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Ramy:

Tell him about a day you spent with your family out. Your email address is Sara@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is Ramy@gmail.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....,

....

....

....

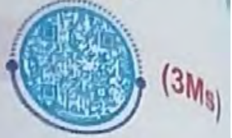
................,

....

Test 9 on Unit 5



خاص بالأزهر الشريف



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. A felucca is made of (glass - wood - metal).
2. A felucca is a (new - modern - traditional) sailing boat.
3. I went on a felucca on the (Red Sea - River Nile - Lake Nasser).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3Ms)

camel - century - explorer - voyage

Hosam : Who was Marco Polo?

Ayman : He was an Italian .... He visited China hundreds years ago.

Hosam : When did he go there?

Ayman : He went there in the 13th ....

Hosam : How did he go there?

Ayman : He went on a long .... by sea.

Hosam : What did he do next?

Ayman : He rode a .... all the way to China.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. I (go - went - am going) to the Zoo yesterday.
2. When someone finds something that people didn't know about, it's a/an (discovery - invention - inspiration).
3. She (was - wasn't - were) at school yesterday. Yesterday was a holiday.
4. Mustafa went on a trip down the Nile on a (car - felucca - taxi).

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Last week, Samar and her friends went on a school trip to Cairo and Giza by bus. In the early morning, her father took her to school where she caught the bus. They reached Cairo at nine o'clock. First, they visited the

museum, where they enjoyed seeing many statues. Then, they visited the zoo and saw different animals. They had lunch there and took many pictures. After that, they visited the Pyramids. They came back home at ten o'clock. They were very happy.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. They went to Cairo and Giza by (car - train - bus).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "early" is (late - quickly - slowly).

B Answer these questions:

3. How long did the trip take? ▶ ....
4. What did the students see in the zoo? ▶ ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. last year - treasure - found - The travelers. ▶ ....
2. animals - see - types of - you - What - can? ▶ .... ?
3. people - Local - objects - found - some. ▶ ....

6 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- no i don't want to go to the club on monday ▶ ....

7 Write an email to your English friend Jack: (5Ms)

Tell him about the great discoveries the archaeologists make in your country from time to time. Tell him about the monuments and treasures they find, and where they put them. Your email address is ali@yahoo.com. And your friend's email address is jack@hotmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....

....

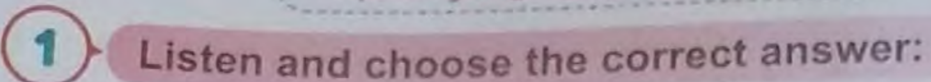
...................,

....

Test 10 on Unit 5

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

Total 30



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



(3Ms)

1. (Ibn Batuta - Vasco de Gama - Marco Polo) was an Italian explorer.
2. He visited (Egypt - Italy - China) in the 13th century.
3. He wrote a (story - diary - book) about his experience.

2 Listen and complete the sentences:



(3Ms)

1. The local people found some unusual .... under the ground.
2. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of ....
3. The .... were all in the same style.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. A team of (teachers - doctors - traders - archaeologists) found many sculptures around Nok.
2. I (study - studied - am studying - studies) math and science yesterday.
3. The dromedaries in the (carnival - caravan - party - river) moved slowly up and down the dunes.
4. He didn't (come - comes - coming - came) to school last week.

4 Read and match "A" with "B":

(5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. Where was your last vacation?	a) the Gobi Desert in 1275.
2. In the desert, it's warm in the sun	b) strong winds.
3. He went into	c) many sculptures in that area.
4. How does the writer feel on his first day?	d) but cool in the shade.
5. A team of archaeologists found	e) He is bored.
	f) I went to Hurghada with my family.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Have you ever read any stories about traveling in the old days? In the old days, people traveled on foot or horseback. Nowadays, they travel by air. It's the quickest way to travel. They also travel by sea or by land in trains or cars. People travel for different reasons. Some people go on business. And some travel for their health. Others travel for pleasure. They want to see other places, visit famous towns or cities and buy souvenirs from different countries. Some students travel to complete their studies. This gives them the chance to have better jobs.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Traveling by land means traveling by (trains - planes - ships - boats).
2. Students travel to complete their (jobs - tests - studies - lessons).

B Answer these questions:

3. What's the quickest way to travel?
4. How did people travel in the past?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. The museum - had - objects - a lot of - from China - ancient. ▶ ....
2. you - help - Can - me, - please? ▶ .... ?
3. experience - an amazing - had - The scientists. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- are dina and yasmin good at planting trees ▶ ....

8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"Deserts"

▶ **Ideas to help you:**

desert - hard life - little rain - little water - hot weather - sand dunes - animals - people - tents

....

....

....

....

Unit 6

Taking care

الاعتناء (الاهتمام)

In this unit I will ....

- listen, read, research, and write about making things at home
- talk about quantities
- find the meaning of words in a text
- learn how to pronounce /ə/ in sentences
- learn about personal care in Ancient Egypt
- write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients
- research and create a poster about different spices





Lesson 1 Let's make candles!

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

English	Arabic
candle	شمعة
wax	شمع
perfume oil	زيت العطور
drops	قَطَرَات
wick	فتيل
cotton rope	حبل قطني
popsicle sticks	أعواد المثلجات
squeeze	يعصر - يضغط
press	يضغط
heat (v)	يُسَخِّن
stir (v)	يُقَلِّب

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
instructions	تعليمات - إرشادات	soap crystals	بلورات الصابون
palm trees	أشجار النخيل	flower petals	بتلات (أوراق) الزهور
bottle	زجاجة	salt	ملح
step (n)	خطوة	sugar	سكر

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
listen	يستمع	listened
need	يحتاج	needed
smell	يشم	smelled
press	يضغط	pressed
heat	يُسخّن	heated

Present		Past
discuss	يناقش	discussed
melt	ينصهر - يَضْهَر	melted
use	يستخدم	used
squeeze	يعصر	squeezed
stir	يُقلّب	stirred

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
do	يفعل	did
read	يقرأ	read
make	يصنع	made
say	يقول	said

Present		Past
hold	يحمل - يمسك	held
see	يرى	saw
think	يعتقد	thought
find	يجد	found

Tip!

When you listen for quantities, remember to listen/look for numbers and words about measurements. For example, kilograms, grams, liters, milliliters, spoons, packages, cans.

دما تستمع إلى الكميات، تذكّر أن تستمع / تبحث عن أرقام وكلمات عن القياسات.
ى سبيل المثال، كيلو جرامات، جرامات، لترات، مليلترات، ملاعق، عبوات، علب.

What do Leila and her mom make?

Mom : Hi, Laila. I love making things. Why don't we make something new?

Laila : That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?

Mom : I have some perfume oil. We can use it to make candles.

Laila : Candles? Wow! I love it!

Mom : Here are the instructions. Can you read them out to me?

Laila : Right. First, we need some wax.

Mom : Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

Laila : It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."

Mom : Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?

Laila : We need some perfume oil.

Mom : Here. These are little bottles of lemon oil. Mmm... they smell lovely. How much do we need?

Laila : The instructions say, "Squeeze in about 40 drops of oil."

Mom : Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and press them on the tops of the candles.

Laila : Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one wick - that's the little cotton rope inside the candle.

Mom : Oh, yes. And we need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

Laila : So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right? Now, what do we need to do first?

Mom : Let's see... "Step one: Heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well."

ماذا تفعل ليلى ووالدتها؟

الأم : مرحبًا يا ليلى. أنا أُحِبُّ صُنع الأشياء. لِمَ لا نصنع شيئًا جديدًا؟

ليلى : هذه فكرة رائعة. هل لديكِ شيء معين في بالكِ؟

الأم : لديّ بعضٌ من زيت العطور. يمكننا استخدامه لِصُنْعِ الشموع.

ليلى : الشموع؟ واوا لقد أحببتُ الفكرة!

الأم : ها هي الإرشادات. هل يمكنكِ قراءتها لي؟

ليلى : حسنًا. أولاً، نحتاج إلى بعض الشمع.

الأم : ها هو. إنه شمع نخيل من أشجار النخيل المصرية. إنه يصنع شموعًا جميلة حقًا. كم نحتاج منه؟

ليلى : تقول الإرشادات، "استخدم 450 جرامًا من الشمع لِصُنع ثلاث شمعات".

الأم : حسنًا، يوجد حوالي 500 جرام هنا. هذا كافٍ. ماذا بعد ذلك؟

ليلى : نحتاج إلى بعضٍ من زيت العطور.

الأم : ها هو. هذه زجاجات صغيرة من زيت الليمون. أمممم ... رائحتها جميلة. كم نحتاج منها؟

ليلى : تقول الإرشادات، "أضف حوالي 40 نقطة من الزيت."

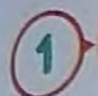
الأم : حسنًا. ويمكننا أن نأخذ حوالي 15 زهرة ونضغطها فوق الشموع.

ليلى : نعم، هذه فكرة جيدة. بعدها سنحتاج إلى كوب زجاجيّ لكل شمعة وفتيل - والفتيل هو الحبل القطنيّ الصغير الذي يوجد داخل الشمعة.

الأم : أوه، نعم. ونحتاج إلى بعض أعواد المثلجات لتثبيت الفتائل في أعلى الأكواب.

ليلى : إذن ما نحتاجه هو ثلاثة أكواب وثلاث فتائل وثلاثة أعواد مثلجات، أليس كذلك؟ الآن، ماذا علينا أن نفعل أولًا؟

الأم : لنرى ... "الخطوة الأولى: سخِّن الشمع لِتُذِيبه، ثم قلِّبه جيدًا."



Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. What do Leila and her mom make?	a) 450 grams of wax.
2. Here is the palm wax.	b) I think you need perfume.
3. How much wax do we need?	c) Step one: Heat the wax to melt it.
4. I have little bottles of perfume oil.	d) It makes really nice candles.
5. What do we need to do first?	e) They smell lovely.
	f) They make the candles.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

palm trees – instructions – press – grams – wax

Mom : Laila, here are the ① .... for making the candles.

Laila : Right. First, we need some ② ....

Mom : Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian ③ .... It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

Laila : It says, "Use 450 ④ .... of wax to make three candles."

Mom : Okay, there's about 500 grams here. What's next?

Laila : The instructions say, "Squeeze in about 40 drops of perfume oil."

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. We sometimes use the light of (sun - candles - oil) at night when it's dark.
2. (Perfume – Cooking - Water) oils usually smell nice.
3. I'm happy when I feel (clouds - ropes - drops) of rain falling on my head.
4. Candles are made of (cotton - sticks - wax).
5. (Palm - Flower - Bottle) trees give us dates.
6. The (wick - wax - stick) is the little cotton rope inside the candle.

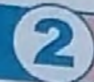
7. Popsicle (sticks - ropes - trees) are usually thin and long.
8. I wash my hands with water and (oil - soap - soup) before having my meals.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. oils - Perfume - lovely - smell.
   ▶ ....
2. I - two - have - lemon - bottles of - oil.
   ▶ ....
3. need - We - one - each - candle - glass for.
   ▶ ....
4. the - Heat - wax - to - it - melt.
   ▶ ....
5. don't - I - like - candles - making.
   ▶ ....
6. do - need to - we - candles - make - What?
   ▶ .... ?

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what do laila and her mom make
   ▶ ....
2. ahmed is such a clever student
   ▶ ....
3. do you like pizza
   ▶ ....
4. no my mom can t drive cars
   ▶ ....
5. it s very cold in january
   ▶ ....
6. yes but you don t need wax
   ▶ ....





Lesson 2 Ancient Egyptians ate well!

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



paintings رسومات



festival مهرجان - احتفال



herbs أعشاب



preserve (v) يحفظ

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Foods and drinks

barley	شعير	lentils	عدس
vegetables	خضراوات	meat	لحم
onions	بصل	fish	سمك
garlic	ثوم	ducks	بط
beans	فول - حبوب - فاصوليا	geese	أوز
wheat	قمح	chickens	دجاج
bread	خبز	honey	عسل
eggs	بيض	cream	قشطة
cheese	جُبن - جبنة	dates	بلح - تمر
spices	توابل	cakes	كيك - كعك
salt	ملح	figs	تين
taste better	مذاقه أفضل	sweet fruit drinks	مشروبات فواكه مسكرة

Unit 6

Recipe & Ingredients

hibiscus tea	شاي الكركديه	chocolate chip cookies	كوكيز برقائق الشوكولاتة
flour	دقيق	butter	زبدة
sugar	سكر	vanilla essence	خلاصة الفانيليا
mixture	خليط - مزيج		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
depend on	يعتمد على	depended on
last	يستمر - يدوم	lasted
add	يضيف	added

Present		Past
cook	يطبخ	cooked
taste	له مذاق	tasted
dry	يجفف	dried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
take care	يهتم	took care
eat	يأكل	ate
drink	يشرب	drank

Present		Past
show	تُظهر	showed
grow	يزرع	grew
have	يتناول	had

What did families use to make their cooking taste better?

Paintings ❶ from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care ❷ of their bodies and ate very well! So what did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on ❸ how much water came from the Nile floods ❹. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, garlic, lentils ❺, and beans, and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley ❻. People used this to make bread and they ate a lot of this every day.

❶ رسومات
❷ اعتنى - اهتم بـ
❸ اعتمد على
❹ فيضانات النيل
❺ عدس
❻ شعير

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at
festivals ⑦. They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and
chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats.
There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there
was honey! People often used honey with bread and cream ⑧ to
make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs ⑨ to make sweet fruit drinks.
Some families also knew how to use spices ⑩ and herbs ⑪ to make their
cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve ⑫ food. For
example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep
fruit and vegetables for the winter.

⑦ احتفالات - مهرجانات
⑧ قشطة
⑨ تين
⑩ توابل
⑪ أعشاب
⑫ يحفظ

GRAMMAR STUDY

Nouns الأسماء

- **Nouns are divided into countable nouns and uncountable nouns.**
- تنقسم الأسماء إلى أسماء تُعد (تجمع) وأسماء لا تعد (لا تجمع).
- **Most nouns are countable and have a singular and plural form.**
- مُعظم الأسماء تُعد، ولها صِيغَة مُفْرَد وَصِيغَة جَمْع.

girl →	girls	story →	stories	loaf →	loaves
glass →	glasses	mango →	mangoes	brush →	brushes
watch →	watches	man →	men	mouse →	mice

▶ I ate a mango. ▶ My brother ate two mangoes.

- **There are other nouns which are uncountable. They do not have a plural form.**
- بعض الأسماء لا تُعد، وهي التي ليس لها صِيغَة جمع وتُعَامَل معاملة المفرد مثل:

○ أسماء مأكولات ومَشْرُوبَات:

cheese - bread - butter - rice - milk - water - orange juice - apple juice - meat - sugar - salt - tea - oil - coffee - mint ....

○ أسماء أخرى:

time - money - news - information - homework - traffic - help - weight - paint - furniture ....

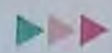
- Is there any butter in the bowl?
- There's a little money in my mom's bag.
- This news is important.

لاحظ أن:

- بعض الكلمات يمكن أن تُستَخدَم كأسماء تُعد وأسماء لا تُعد.
  (fish - food - ice cream - time - oil - juice ....)
  - I like making ice cream with my mom.
  - She bought two ice creams an hour ago.

Expressions of quantities تعبيرات الكميات

a lot of الكثير من	much كثير من "للكمية"	many العديد من - الكثير "للعدد"
some - any بعض - أي	a little قليل "للكمية"	a few قليل "للعدد"



تُستَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد

- There's a lot of milk in the bottle.
- I have a lot of friends.



تُستَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد

- There's some bread in the basket. (تُستَخْدَم في الجمل المثبتة)
- There are some students in the laboratory. (تُستَخْدَم في الجمل المثبتة)



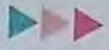
تُستَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد

- Is there any water in the glass? (تُستَخْدَم في الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية)
- There aren't any eggs in the fridge. (تستخدم في الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية)



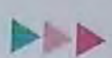
تُستَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي تعد فقط

- There aren't many eggs in the fridge. We can't have eggs for dinner.



تُستَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد فقط

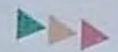
- There isn't much oil in the bottle.



تُستَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي تعد فقط

▶ There are a few stores in this street.





○ تُسْتَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد فقط

▶ There's a little sugar in her tea.

لاحظ أن: ○ (any - some) إذا إسْتُخْدِما مع الأسماء التي تعد نعاملهما معاملة الجمع، وإذا إسْتُخْدِما مع الأسماء التي لا تعد نعاملهما معاملة المفرد.

There is يوجد (للمفرد)

There are يوجد (للجمع)

▶ There is some milk in this bottle.

▶ There are some tomatoes in the bag.

▶ There isn't any salt in this food. She forgot to put some.

▶ There aren't any oranges in the market. I can't see any.

How many - How much

How many كم عدد

■ **We use "How many"...? to ask about quantities of countable things, like leaves, lemons, cars or people. We can reply to the question with a number (a / an / one, five, twenty), or an approximate amount (some, a few, a lot of).**

■ نستخدم (How many) لنسأل عن عدد "اسم يُعد"، ودائمًا الاسم الذي يليها يكون جمعًا، ويمكن أن نجيب على هذا السؤال باستخدام عدد (... a / an / one, five, twenty)، أو باستخدام أحد تعبيرات الكمية التقريبية (... some / a few / a lot of).

● How many lemons do we need for the lemonade?

▶ We need five lemons. ▶ We need a few lemons.

How much ما كمية

■ **We use How much...? to ask about quantities of uncountable things, like tea, sugar, oil or grass. We can only reply to this question with an approximate amount (some, a little, a lot of).**

نستخدم (**How much**) لنسأل عن كمية "اسم لا يُعد"، ودائمًا الاسم الذي يليها يكون اسم مفرد لا يُعد، ويمكن أن نجيب على هذا السؤال باستخدام أحد تعبيرات الكمية التقريبية (... **some** / **a little** / **a lot**).

▶ How much oil do we need? ▶ We need a little oil.

Remember

we can also talk about quantities of both countable and uncountable things using measurements.

تذكر أن: يمكننا التحدث عن كميات الأسماء التي تُعد والتي لا تُعد باستخدام أدوات القياس.

(**gram** - **liter** - **kilo** - **centimeter** - **millimeter** ......)

▶ We need 400 grams of chicken.

▶ Please buy two liters of milk.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

grew - floods - Nile - depended

The water of the ① .... has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often ② .... on how much water came from the Nile ③ .... Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew different vegetables, fruit and grains.

2 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. There is some	a) oranges on the table.
2. Are there any	b) cheese on the plate?
3. There are some	c) dates on the palm tree?
4. Is there any	d) juice in the packet.

3 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. There is a little	a) salt in your soup?
2. Are there many	b) tomatoes in the kitchen.
3. There are a few	c) water in the bottle.
4. Is there much	d) apples in the fridge?

4 Read and complete the mini-dialogues with the words in the box:

How many - How much

1. **Hani** : .... milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?
   Grandma: Just a little milk, thanks Hani.
2. **Fareeda** : .... students are there in your English class, Dalia?
   Dalia : There are about forty, I think.
3. **Sherif** : .... math problems did you do yesterday?
   Kareem : Just a few. They were difficult.
4. **Rana** : I'm going to the market now. .... tomatoes do we need?
   Mom : Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit.
5. **Ahmed** : .... water is there in the river today?
   Ali : A lot! It rained all day yesterday.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. (How many - How much) lemons do we need for the lemonade?
2. We need (a few - a little) apples to make the pie.
3. (How many - How much) oil do we need? We need (a few - a little) oil.
4. (How many - How much) chairs are there in the room?
5. There is (a lot of - a little) juice left. We can all drink 2 rounds.
6. She needs (a few - a little) help.
7. (How many - How much) movies did you see this year?
8. They're having (a lot of - a few) fun.
9. (How many - How much) mint do you put in your tea?
10. (How many - How much) butter do you need for the recipe?

11. Give me (a few - a little) more grapes.
12. I've lost (a few - a little) weight.
13. I'll be back in (a few - a little) minutes.
14. (How many - How much) languages can you speak?
15. (How many - How much) paint do you need to cover the walls?
16. There were (a few - a little) birds there.
17. Please hurry. We don't have (a lot of - a few) time.
18. Can I have (a few - a little) sugar in my coffee, please?
19. There isn't (some - any) bread. Can you buy (some - a few)?
20. I don't have (a lot of - a few) money for Mom's present.
21. (How many - How much) candles does 450 grams of wax make?
22. Do we have (some - any) ice cream? I'd really like (some - any).
23. (How many - How much) brothers and sisters do you have?
24. There are (some - any) girls from Luxor in my class.
25. There aren't (some - any) tigers in Egypt.
26. Are there (some - any) lemons?
27. (There is - There are) a lot of books on the shelf.
28. (There is - There are) a lot of sugar in my cup.
29. (There is - There are) a little butter in this recipe.
30. (There is - There are) a few desks in my class.
31. (How many - How much) orange juice do you need?
32. (How many - How much) oranges do you need?
33. There's some (lemons - grapes - rice) in the bag.
34. There are some (butter - potatoes - bread) over there.
35. Is there any (tomatoes - eggs - butter) in the pan?
36. Are there any (carrots - salt - oil) in the salad?
37. There (am - is - are) some cheese in the fridge.
38. There (am - is - are) some lemons in the tree.
39. (Am - Is - Are) there any honey in the jar?
40. (Am - Is - Are) there any jars of honey in the cupboard?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. took care of - Egyptians - Ancient - bodies - their.

▶ ....

2. did - What - eat - Egyptians - Ancient - the?
▶ .... ?
3. in Ancient - Egypt - meat - Most people - a little - ate.
▶ ....
4. Ancient Egypt - in - There - a lot of - were - bees.
▶ ....
5. of milk - How - bottles - are - there - many?
▶ .... ?
6. preserve - They - food - knew - to - how.
▶ ....
7. oil - much - do - need - How - we?
▶ .... ?

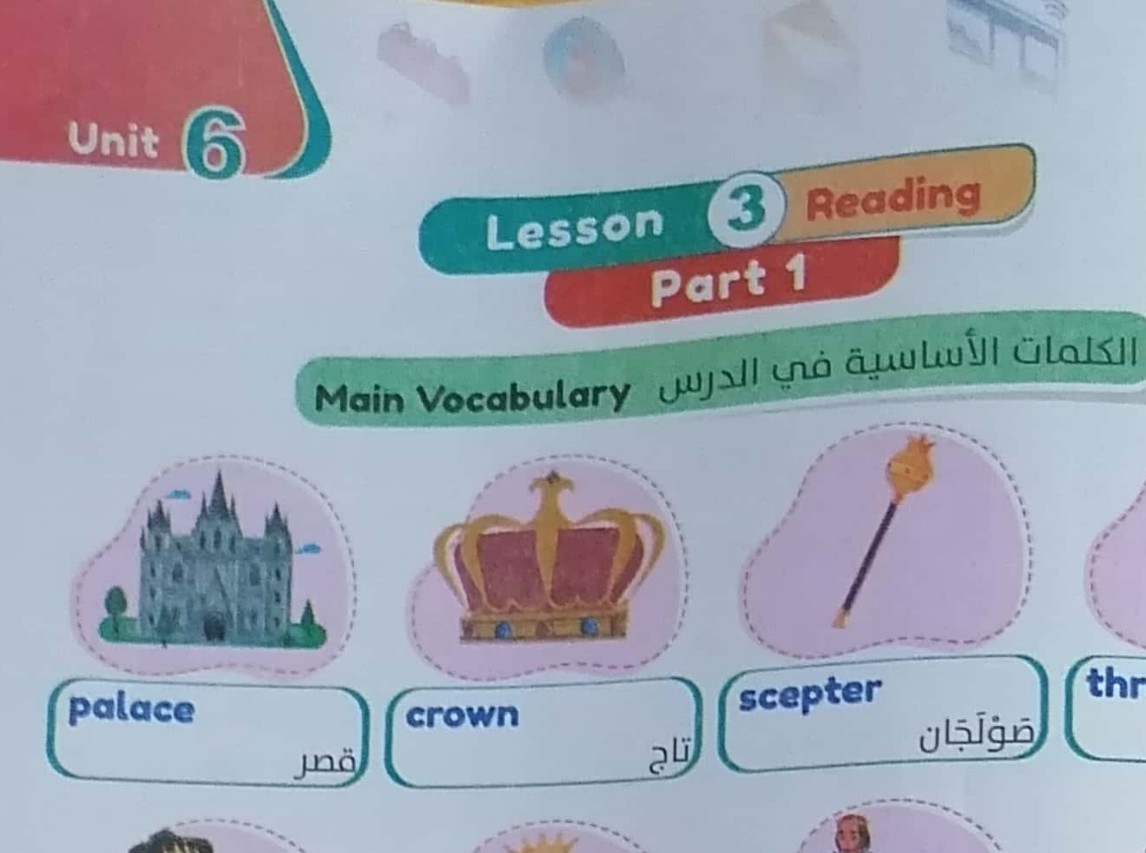
7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. my cousin doesn t like ice cream
▶ ....
2. how many cups of coffee does ramy drink
▶ ....
3. the water of the nile always helped the ancient egyptians
▶ ....
4. how much money do we need adel
▶ ....
5. yes samira plays tennis every thursday
▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Noha:

Tell her about a meal you helped your mom preparing. Tell her what ingredients you used and how you made it. Your email address is rana@hotmail.com. And your friend's email address is noha@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,
....
.............,
....



Lesson 3 Reading
Part 1

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

English	Arabic
palace	قصر
crown	تاج
scepter	صَوْلَجَان
throne	كرسي العرش
queen	ملكة
king	ملِك
prince	أمير
princess	أميرة
royal	مَلَكي (خاص بالعائلات الملكية)
lean	يميل - يستند - ينحنى
dust (n)	تراب
astonished (adj)	مندهش

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

statues	تماثيل	furniture	أثاث (موبيليا)
bath tub	حوض الاستحمام	carpets	سجاد
royal bathroom	حمام ملكي	curtains	ستائر

Prepositions

at once	في الحال	pick up	يلتقط
put on	يرتدي	knock on the door	يطرق على الباب

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
lean	ينحني - يميل	leaned
knock	يطرق	knocked
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
pass	يمر	passed
clean	يُنظّف	cleaned

Present		Past
explain	يشرح	explained
pick up	يلتقط	picked up
explore	يستكشف	explored
notice	يلاحظ	noticed
hurry	يُسْرِع	hurried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
put on	يرتدي	put on
come	يأتي	came
go	يذهب	went
hear	يسمع	heard
spend (years)	يقضي (سنوات)	spent

Present		Past
understand	يفهم	understood
fall	يسقط	fell
get out	يخرج	got out
sit	يجلس	sat
tell	يخبر	told

The Missing King

1. Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things - old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.

2. One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the royal children - the prince and the princess - are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing!

3. Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is leaning dangerously over the princess's head. Peter knows he must find the king at once!

4. He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind doors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! I'm enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is astonished. When the king comes out, he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the dust off me. Dust damages the painting, so I simply had to have a bath."



5. Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says. "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. Otherwise, they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the painting to pick up the scepter.

6. Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged - and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!

الملك المفقود

1. يعيش بيتر في قصر كبير حيث يعمل والديه على رعاية القصر. القصر قديم ولا أحد يعيش فيه الآن. يحب بيتر استكشاف الغُرَف. إنها مليئة بأشياء ثمينة ومثيرة للاهتمام - لوحات قديمة وتماثيل وسجاجيد وأثاث.

2. في أحد الأيام، يلاحظ بيتر شيئًا غريبًا يتعلق باللوحة الكبيرة الموجودة في غرفة الطعام. عادةً ما تُظهر هذه اللوحة الملوّنة أحد الملوك القدامى جالسًا على العرش وعلى رأسه تاج وفي يده صولجان طويل، وبجواره الملكة وأطفال العائلة الملكية - الأمير والأميرة. لكن مكان الملك في اللوحة فارغ اليوم: إنه مفقود!

3. بيتر متفاجئ وينظر بعناية إلى اللوحة مرة أخرى. يمكنه رؤية التاج والصولجان، لكن الملك ليس موجودًا. كما أن الصولجان يميل بصورة خطيرة نحو رأس الأميرة. يعلم بيتر أنه يتوجب عليه إيجاد الملك في الحال!

4. يبحث بيتر في جميع غُرَف القصر، وينظر وراء الأبواب والستائر فيها. وأخيرًا يصل إلى الحمام الملكيّ. فيسمع غناءً، ويطرُق الباب، فيقول الملك: "من بالباب؟ التزم الهدوء من فضلك! أنا أستمتع بحمام ساخن!" بيتر مذهول. عندما يخرج الملك من الحمّام يقول له: "لقد أمضيتُ سنوات جالسًا في تلك اللوحة، ولم يأتِ أحد ليُنَظِّف الغبار عني أبدًا! لقد أتلف الغبار اللوحة، لذا كان عليّ أن أستحم."

5. يَتفهَّم بيتر، ولكن يُوَضِّح للملك أن صولجانه ِعلى وشك السقوط على الأميرة! فيقول الملك: "شكرا لك يا بُنَي، سوف أعود مُسرعًا. ولكن أرجوك نظِّف اللوحات الموجودة في القصر في المستقبل، وإلا سوف تَتلَف اللوحات للأبد!"، ويركض عائدًا إلى اللوحة ليُمْسِك الصولجان.

6. يقوم بيتر الآن بتنظيف جميع اللوحات الموجودة في القصر حتى لا تَتلَف - وحتى لا يُضطَر أحدٌ إلى الخروج من لوحته ليَستَحِمَّ بشكلٍ جيد!

Tip!

You can use pictures in a story to help you understand new words. You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it. For example, is there an article (a/an/the) before the word, or an adjective? If there is, it's a noun. You can then look at the sentences around it and think what the noun could mean in the context.

تستطيع أن تستخدم الصور في قصة لتساعدك على أن تفهم الكلمات الجديدة. تستطيع أيضًا أن تركز في الكلمات الموجودة حول كلمة غير معروفة في النص لتساعدك على فهمها. على سبيل المثال، هل هناك أداة تعريف أو تنكير (a / an / the) قبل الكلمة، أو صفة؟ إذا كان هناك أيٌ من تلك الأشياء، فالكلمة هي اسم. يمكنك بعد ذلك التركيز في الجُمل الموجودة حولها، والتفكير فيما يمكن أن يعنيه الاسم في السياق.

Exercises on Lesson  3 Part (1)

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. Where does Peter live?	a) to pick up the scepter.
2. The king is sitting on his throne	b) He lives in a big palace.
3. The king runs back to the painting	c) It's old and no one lives there now.
4. The rooms are full of	d) with a crown on his head.
5. What is the palace like?	e) the scepter is leaning.
	f) interesting and precious things.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. king - is - What - the - doing?
   ▶ .... ?
2. palace - a - lives - Peter - big - in.
   ▶ ....
3. Peter - Where - live - does?
   ▶ .... ?



4. wasn't - king - The - happy.

▶ ....

5. the - did - Why - king - the painting - leave?

▶ .... ?

6. like - dining - didn't - the - room - I.

▶ ....

7. see - He - crowns - and - can - scepters.

▶ ....

8. does - find - Where - king - the - Peter?

▶ .... ?

3 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. does peter notice something strange

▶ ....

2. yes we can go through these rooms

▶ ....

3. summer is my favorite season

▶ ....

4. did you see the moroccan king

▶ ....

5. ancient egyptians were so clever

▶ ....

6. do you like eating cookies

▶ ....

4 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A king I have read about"

Ideas to help you:

- **Who is that king?**
- **What country did he rule?**
- **When did he rule it?**
- **What did you know about him?**
- **What things did you like about him?**

....

....

....

....

....





Lesson 3 Social studies
Part 2

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

Ancient Egyptian Traditions

- **soap** صابون
- **shampoo** شامبو
- **perfume** عطر
- **personal care** عناية شخصية
- **incense** بخور
- **hairbrush** فرشاة شعر
- **mixture** خليط
- **toothpaste** معجون أسنان
- **toothbrush** فرشاة أسنان
- **products** منتجات

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

common herbs	أعشاب شائعة	powder	مسحوق
cheaper	أرخص	minerals	معادن

Lesson 3

expensive	غالٍ	mint candies	حلوى النعناع
cone shape	شكل قمع (مخروطي)	dried iris flowers	زهور سوسن مجففة
tied to	مربوط بـ	pine seeds	بذور الصنوبر
ingredients	مكونات	small pieces	قطع صغيرة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
recommend	يقترح	recommended
mix	يخلط	mixed
cover	يُغطي	covered

Present		Past
cool	تبرّد	cooled
rub	يدعك - يفرك	rubbed
tie	يربط	tied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
stick	يلتصق	stuck
keep	يُبقي	kept
cut	يُقطع - يقص	cut

Present		Past
mean	يعني - يقصد	meant
wear	يرتدي	wore
know	يَعرف	knew

Personal care in the past

Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt!



▶ Perfumes

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!

▶ **Toothpaste**

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush - a stick with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end. The ingredients of their toothpaste were a mint, rock salt, pepper, and dried iris flowers. They put this dry powder directly onto their teeth and rubbed it with their toothbrushes.

▶ **Breath Mints**

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.

العناية الشخصية في الماضي

العديد من المنتجات التي نستخدمها اليوم للعناية الشخصية قد استُخدمت لأول مرة في مصر القديمة!

◀ **العطور**

أحبّ المصريون القدماء العطور القوية. كان العطر الأكثر رواجًا وقتها يُسمّى «كابيت»، وكان غالي الثمن لأنه كان يحتوي على الكثير من المُكوّنات، والتي كان يصعب العثور على بعضها. ولكنه كان يحتوي أيضًا على بعض الأعشاب الشائعة، مثل إكليل الجبل والنعناع، وبهارات مثل الهيل والقرفة.

كانت العطور الأرخص ثمناً تُصنع من الزهور والأعشاب وبعض أنواع المعادن، ثم تُخلط بالزيت لصُنع كريم. أو كانوا يضغطون المكوّنات الجافة في شكل مخروطيٍّ لصُنع البخور. في اللوحات المصرية القديمة، يمكنك في كثير من الأحيان رؤية رجال ونساء يرتدون أقماع العطور تلك على رؤوسهم في الاحتفالات!

◀ **معجون الأسنان**

لتنظيف أسنانهم، استخدم المصريون القدماء نوعًا من فُرش الأسنان - عبارة عن عصا بها قطع صغيرة من ورق البردي مربوطة في أحد طرفيها. وكانت مُكوّنات معجون أسنانهم عبارة عن نعناع وملح صخري وفلفل وزهور سوسن مجففة. كانوا يضعون هذا المسحوق الجاف على أسنانهم مباشرة ويدعكونها بفُرش أسنانهم.

◀ **النعناع المُعطّر للفمّ**

للحفاظ على أفواههم مُعطرة طوال اليوم، صنع المصريون القدماء حلوى النعناع. لقد خلطوا القرفة والبطيخ وبذور الصنوبر وبعض المكسرات مع العسل. ثم كانوا يقومون بتسخين الخليط على النار، وتركه ليَبْرُد، وتقطيعه إلى حلوى مربعة صغيرة.

Exercises on Lesson 3 Part (2)

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
1. Many of the personal care	a) from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals.
2. The Ancient Egyptians	b) cone shape.
3. The most popular perfume was	c) loved strong perfumes.
4. Cheaper perfumes were made	d) products were first used in Ancient Egypt!
5. To keep their mouths fresh all day,	e) called kapet.
	f) the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stick – powder – teeth – incense – toothpaste

To clean their ① ...., Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush. It's a ② .... with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end. The ingredients of their ③ .... were mint, rock salt, pepper, and dried iris flowers. They put this dry ④ .... directly onto their teeth and rubbed it with their toothbrushes.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mixture – mint – cool – heat – seeds

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made ① .... candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine ② ...., and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the ③ .... over a fire, left it to ④ ...., and cut it into small square candies.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. Kapet - Ancient - an - was - expensive - perfume - in - Egypt.
   ▶ ....
2. had - perfumes - Cheaper - spices - a lot of - them - in.
   ▶ ....
3. Do - like - you - perfumes - using?
   ▶ .... ?
4. perfumes - Egyptians - strong - loved - The Ancient.
   ▶ ....
5. The Ancient - made - Egyptians - candies - mint.
   ▶ ....

5 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"My personal care tools"

▶ **Ideas to help you:** soap - shampoo - perfume - hairbrush - toothpaste - toothbrush

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

SOAP

Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project



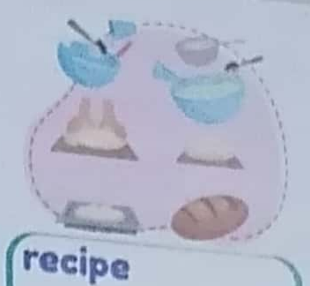
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



flavors نكهات



packaged spices بهارات مُعَبّأة (مُغَلّفَة)



recipe وصفة



souvenirs هدايا تذكارية

Salt dough recipe

salt dough model	نموذج عجينة الملح	low temperature	درجة حرارة منخفضة
ingredients	مُكَوّنات	preparation time	وقت التحضير
mixture	خليط - مزيج	hard	صلب
bowl	سلطانية - وعاء - إناء	items	عناصر
baking tray	صينية خَبز	plain flour	دقيق صافي
oven	فرن	method	طريقة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

combination	مزيج - خليط	delicious dishes	أطباق لذيذة - أكلات لذيذة
famous for	مشهور بـ	to color cloth	تلوين الملابس
medicine	دواء	beautifully packaged	مُغَلّفَة - مُعَبّأة بشكل جميل
spice stores	محلات البهارات	flat surface	سطح مستوٍ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
heat	يُسخّن	heated	work	يعمل	worked
mix	يخلط	mixed	roll ... flat	يُفرِد ...	rolled ... flat
add	يضيف	added	paint	يُلوِّن	painted
start	يبدأ	started	bake	يخبز	baked
form	يُكوِّن	formed	stir	يُقلِّب	stirred

Salt dough recipe

1. Preparation time

10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

2. Ingredients

1 cup of plain flour (about 250g)

$\frac{1}{2}$ a cup of salt (about 125g)

$\frac{1}{2}$ a cup of water (about 125ml)

3. Method

1. Heat the oven on a low temperature.
2. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.
3. Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects.
4. Put your finished items on a baking tray and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard.
5. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.

وصفة عجينة الملح

1. وقت التحضير

10 دقائق + 3 ساعات للطبخ

2. المكوِّنات

1 كوب دقيق صافي (حوالي 250 جرام)

$\frac{1}{2}$ كوب ملح (حوالي 125 جم)

$\frac{1}{2}$ كوب ماء (حوالي 125 مل)

3. الطريقة

1. سخِّن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة.
2. اخلط الدقيق والملح في وعاء كبير. أضف القليل من الماء، ثم أضف قليلًا منه مرة أخرى، وقلِّب المزيج حتى يبدأ في تكوين كرة.
3. ضع كرة العجين على سطحٍ مستوٍ، وشكِّلها بالشكل الذي تريده. يمكنك فردها وتقطيع أشكال أو أرقام أو حروف منها، أو استخدم العجينة لعمل أشياء ثلاثية الأبعاد.
4. ضع العناصر النهائية على صينية خَبْز وأدْخِلْهَا الفرن لمدة 3 ساعات حتى تصبح صلبة.
5. اترك العناصر لتبرد، ثم قم بتلوينها.

Tip!

When we write instructions for the steps in a process, we often number them. This shows the reader that they have to do the steps in order to complete the process correctly.

عندما نكتب إرشادات لخطواتٍ في عمليةٍ ما، غالبًا ما نقوم بترقيمها. يوضح هذا للقارئ أنه يتعين عليه القيام بالخطوات بالترتيب لإكمال العملية بشكل صحيح.

Egyptian flavors!



Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume and medicine, and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs, and are beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

النكهات المصرية!



تشتهر مصر ببهاراتها التي تُستخدم في الطبخ المنزلي والمطاعم في جميع أنحاء البلاد. تُعتبر التركيبات الخاصة من البهارات المختلفة مكونًا سرًا في العديد من الوصفات التي تتناقلها العائلات من جيل إلى جيل. ونحن لا نستخدم البهارات لطهي الطعام فقط، بل نستخدمها أيضًا في العطور والأدوية وتلوين القماش. تباع البهارات في المتاجر والشوارع وفي الأسواق. تُعدّ البهارات الطازجة والملونة والمعبأة بشكل جميل إحدى الهدايا التذكارية المفضلة التي يشتريها السيّاح عند زيارتهم لمصر.

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

combinations – spices – recipes – restaurants – ingredient

Egypt is famous for its ① .... that are used in home cooking and ② .... all across the country. Special ③ .... of different spices are a secret ingredient in many ④ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tourists – packaged – perfume – souvenirs – cloth

We can use spices to make ① .... and medicine, and to color ② .... They also make great ③ .... , and are beautifully packaged for ④ .... visiting spice stores and souks.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. salt - want - make - doesn't - to - dough - He.
   ▶ ....
2. would - salt dough - What - you - with - make?
   ▶ .... ?
3. are - We - having - together - fun.
   ▶ ....

4. do - use - we - What - for - spices?

▶ .... ?

5. is - its - famous - for - spices - Egypt.

▶ ....

6. can - We - use - perfume - spices - make - to.

▶ ....

7 they - are - What - colors?

▶ .... ?

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Ancient Egyptians liked to be clean – they sometimes had a bath four times a day! They washed in the Nile River, or in public bathhouses, and used essential oils and flower oils. Many of the bathhouses in Ancient Egypt were very special places, and some had two floors. On the first floor, people relaxed. On the second floor, they could choose from different kinds of baths, and there was sometimes even a place for exercise and a medical room!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the underlined word 'clean' is (untidy - dirty - clear).
2. They sometimes had a bath (five - four - six) times a day.

B Answer these questions:

3. Where did the Ancient Egyptians wash? ▶ ....
4. What did they use when they had a bath? ▶ ....

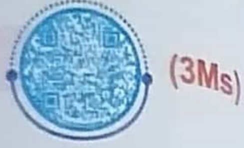
5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what s egypt famous for ▶ ....
2. he s working on fridays ▶ ....
3. no you re not coming with me ▶ ....
4. adel hazem qasem and mustafa are my best friends ▶ ....
5. does sama like all her school subjects ▶ ....
6. basim and karim are playing in the garden ▶ ....

Test ⑪ on Unit ⑥



خاص بالأزهر الشريف



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong (perfumes - deodorants - spices).
2. The most popular perfume was called (Powder - Stick - Kapet).
3. Kapet was (cheap - expensive - not expensive).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3Ms)

soap - hairbrush - perfumes - toothbrush

Mariam : Hi Salma. What are you doing?
Salma : Hi Mariam. I'm brushing my hair with a ① ....
Mariam : Do you always brush your teeth?
Salma : Yes, I always use a ② .... to clean my teeth.
Mariam : Good. You have lots of healthy habits, Salma.
Salma : Yes. I also wash my hands with water and ③ .... very often.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. We need some (soap - wax - herbs) to make candles.
2. The king lives in a/an (apartment - palace - house).
3. How (many - much - often) books are there?
4. Injy doesn't have (some - a - any) money.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Fathi is a baker. He works in a bakery next to our house. It is very hot in the bakery. He sells bread to people after he puts it in bags. His wife

Seham is a nurse in Al Helal Hospital. Her work is to help doctors and look after sick people. All patients love her and she loves them. She always smiles at them. She also looks after her family.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "them" refers to the (patients - doctors - family).
2. Fathi sells (fruit - bags - bread).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does a nurse do? ▶ ....
4. Why do patients love Seham? ▶ ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. lemons - many - need - we - How - do?
   ▶ .... ?
2. likes - Sama - tea - a lot of - her - milk - in.
   ▶ ....
3. lives - in - a - Palace - Peter - big - his parents - with.
   ▶ ....

6 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- farmers grow lots of different spices in egypt ▶ ....

7 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"Egyptian flavors"

▶ **Ideas to help you:**

Egypt - famous - spices - cooking - ingredient - recipes - perfume - medicine - buy - stores - souvenirs - tourists

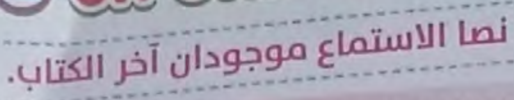
....

....

....

Test 12 on Unit 6





1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate (a little - a few - many - much) meat.
2. People often used (ducks - fruit - honey - cheese) with bread and cream to make cakes.
3. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit (foods - vegetables - jars - drinks).

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)



1. Egypt is famous for its ....
2. We also use spices to color ....
3. Fresh spices are one of the favorite .... that tourists buy.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. We have (much - any - a little - a lot of) candles.
2. They made (mint - perfume - toothpaste - deodorant) candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.
3. Egypt is famous for its (spices - streets - souvenirs - tourists) that are used in home cooking.
4. How (many - much - often - old) coffee do you need? ▶ Only a little.

4 Read and match "A" with "B": (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. We need wax	a) to wash my face.
2. I need a toothbrush	b) There are 20 books.
3. The king has a long	c) to brush my teeth.
4. How much oil do we need?	d) to make candles.
5. How many books are there?	e) scepter in his hand.
	f) We need 300 grams.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

The school is the place where students learn. So students have to follow their school rules. School teaches students how to be good people. Students learn how to be tidy and polite. They spend very interesting time in school. Also they can make friends there. Good school should be clean and tidy.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Schools should be (dirty - untidy - tidy - ugly).
2. Students spend (interesting - boring - sad - unhappy) time at school.

B Answer these questions:

3. What do students have to follow at school?
4. What does school teach students?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. into - mixture - pieces - Stir - the chocolate - the. ▶ ....
2. shampoo - a little - is - There. ▶ ....
3. oil - much - How - do - need - we? ▶ ....?

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- i enjoy this drink in egypt and morocco ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your British friend Bell: (5Ms)

Tell him about the famous drinks you have in your country, how you prepare them, what you put in them, and when do you drink them. Your email address is ramy@yahoo.com. And your friend's email address is bell@school.net

From : ....

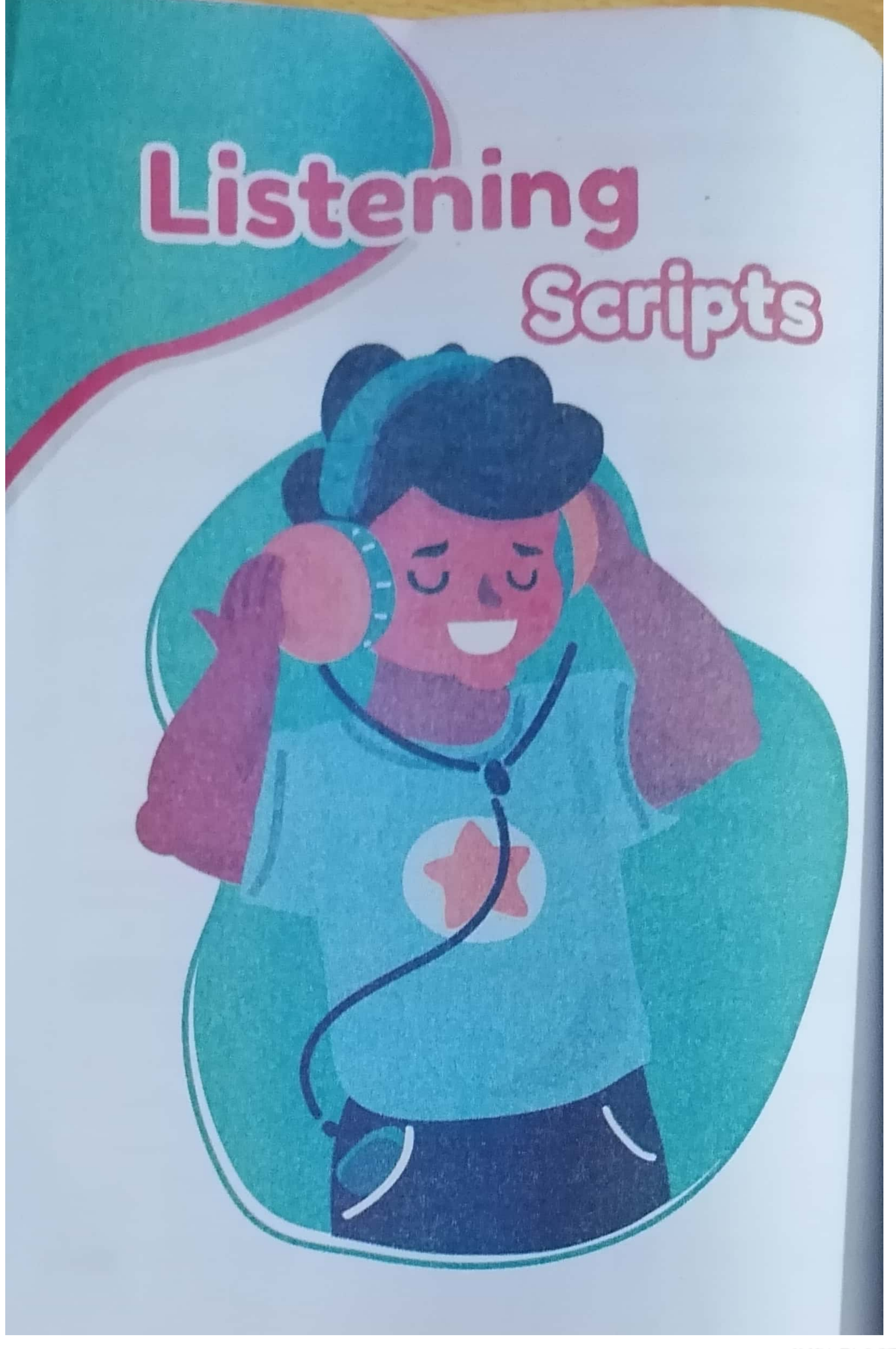
To : ....

Subject : ....

....

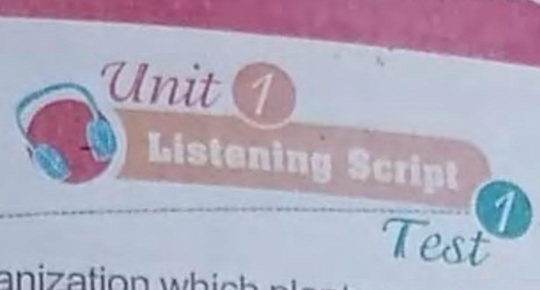
...............,

....


Listening
Scripts

Part 3

Listening Connect (6)



Test 1

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife. We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest.

Question 1

Test 2

In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden.

Question 1

Test 2

The community garden is a big green space on the roof of an apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. They grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the market, too!

Question 2

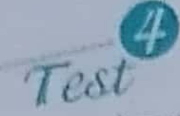


Test 3

The west court is the large open area where students spend time outside. There is playground and playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

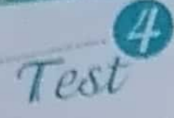
Question 1

Listening Script



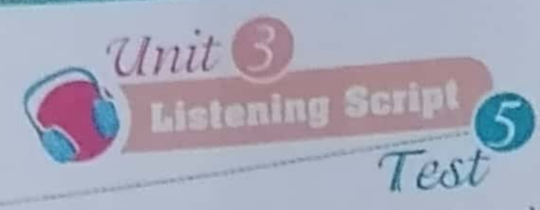
The IT Building is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for their information Technology lessons. We have over 50 desktop computers, Plus laptops and tablets which students can borrow.

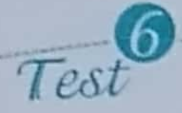
Question 1



The Ahmed Zewail Building is the place where students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories. These laboratories have all the equipme it which classes need to do experiments.

Question 2





Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to vist her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. They can climb up the hill to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. There is a great view from there.

Question 1



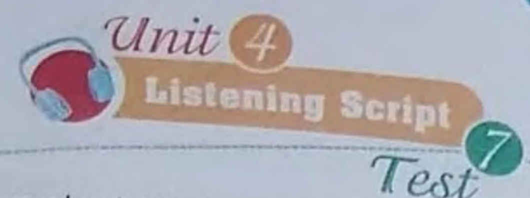
When you arrive at the Carnival, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy, and fairy tales – it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows and concerts. There are places to eat and stores, too.

Question 1

Test 6

Today is my birthday. I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster if you are brave.

Question 2



Unit 4 Listening Script



Test 7

In Egypt, we usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.

Question 1

Test 8

In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn.

Question 1



Test 8

I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. I go running every morning in the park. My friend Aser is organizing a party at his house for the end of the exams.

Question 2



Unit 5 Listening Script

Test 9

Today is Thursday. I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

Question 1



Test 10

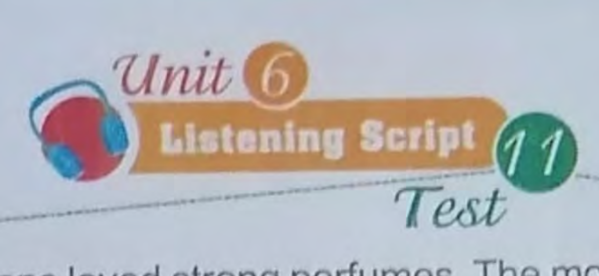
Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He visited China in the 13th century. He wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called the travels of Marco Polo.

Question 1



Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style.

Question 2



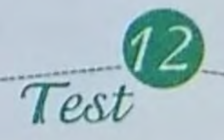
The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called Kapet. It was expensive.

Question 1



Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats. There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

Question 1



Egypt is famous for its spices. We don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Fresh spices are one of the favorite souvenirs that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

Question 2

Step Ahead Series

Together to a bright future

CONNECT 6

First Term

- Units Revision
- Revision Tests
- Answer Key

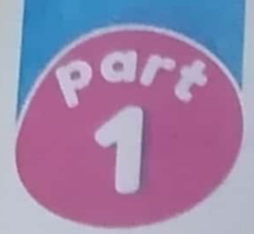




2024



6



Units Revision

Revision on Unit 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

usually - city - theater - shopping - stay

I usually spend time with my sisters. We often go ① .... in the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie ② .... My sister can drive, so she ③ .... takes me in her car. And we always try to meet up for the holiday at Eid Al-Adha, too. We usually ④ .... for a week at their house then.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

performance - species - local - hang - railway

Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some ① .... residents then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with more than 500 ② .... of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 km long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater ③ ...., eat delicious food, or go running, or just ④ .... out with your friends.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

play - brown - share - builds - silent

The selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so he ① .... a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to ② .... The days pass and the garden is always empty and ③ .... Slowly, the green grass turns ④ ....

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

side - Castle - friends - apartment - view

Our ① .... is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great ② .... over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting ③ .... so there's always something to see there. In the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh ④ ...., too!

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

miss - delicious - restaurants - taste - noisy

New York is very ① .... all the time. There are lots of different ② .... here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. I think the food tastes more ③ .... in Egypt. I ④ .... Egyptian food so much!

6 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

often - kids - spend - Nile - countryside

Nadine : What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?

Gameela : I usually ① .... time with my sisters. We often go shopping in the city center. What about you?

Nadine : I usually stay at home and help my mom, but I sometimes visit my grandparents with my sister, Injy, and her ② ....

Gameela : Where do your grandparents live, Nadine?

Nadine : They live in the ③ .... on a farm. It's near a town called Asyut. Do you know it? It's on the River ④ ....

Gameela : Yes, I know Asyut very well.



7 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. Do you want to come	a) It's a big green space.
2. I always help my aunt	b) We never use chemicals.
3. Where is the community garden?	c) In the middle of the city.
4. The people who work there	d) on Friday afternoons.
5. We only use natural fertilizer.	e) to my house?
	f) are all volunteers.

8 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. Our apartment block is	a) makes the children happy.
2. The selfish giant doesn't	b) to climb up into the tree.
3. The lovely garden always	c) new parks and green spaces.
4. New York is very noisy,	d) on the sixteenth floor.
5. He is too small	e) want to share his garden.
	f) but Alexandria is much quieter.

9 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. Roof gardens also help	a) They live in the countryside on a farm.
2. What do you usually do on weekends?	b) I miss our food so much.
3. New York has	c) to help us with our projects.
4. Where do your grandparents live?	d) clean the air in the city.
5. We rarely have enough volunteers	e) a lot of green spaces.
	f) I usually spend time with my sisters.



Revision

10 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. I usually spend time	a) grandparents live?
2. Where do your	b) do something together?
3. My sister can drive,	c) Yes, that sounds great.
4. Do you want to	d) the countryside on a farm.
5. They live in	e) with my sisters.
	f) so she usually takes me in her car

11 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. visits – rarely – us – My – grandpa.
▶ ....

2. friends – always – his – to – Ahmed – is – good.
▶ ....

3. goes – sometimes – Akram – swimming.
▶ ....

4. do – club – the – often – you – How – go to?
▶ .... ?

5. his – giant – The – builds – garden – around – a wall.
▶ ....

6. twice – visits – grandma – a week – She – her.
▶ ....

7. with – your – hang out – You – friends – can.
▶ ....

8. trees – plant – always – We.
▶ ....

9. High – The – was – Line – line – a railway.

▶ ....

10. your – Does – produce – garden – vegetables – a lot of?

▶ .... ?

11. here – nice – The – are – people.

▶ ....

12. things – are – How – Alexandria – in?

▶ .... ?

13. parents – go – there – I – my – often – with.

▶ ....

14. gardens – walk – can – the – You – through.

▶ ....

15. time – New York – very – all – noisy – is – the.

▶ ....

16. the news – me – from – Tell – all – home.

▶ ....

17. the – theater – go – movie – We – to – sometimes.

▶ ....

18. my – spend – usually – time – sisters – I – with.

▶ ....

19. the countryside – a farm – in – They – on – live.

▶ ....

20. do – What – like – you – your neighborhood – about?

▶ .... ?

12 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. new york has a lot of green spaces

▶ ....

2. i miss egyptian food so much

▶ ....

3. your new dress sounds great mariam
▶

4. how are things in alexandria
▶

5. there are lots of restaurants in new york
▶

6. what things does she miss about egypt
▶

7. please write back soon
▶

8. how are things with you
▶

9. is ahmed good at planting trees
▶

10. scottish food is ok but egyptian food is better
▶

11. i don t know the names of chinese dishes
▶

12. samira s family lives in a tall building
▶

13. what s wael's favorite place in usa
▶

13 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. They are all (carpenters - volunteers - mechanics). They don't take any money.
2. I (miss - leave - come back) my home. I want to go back soon.
3. She lives in an apartment in a big apartment (garden - roof - block).

4. They usually (raise - plant - keep) tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce on the farm.
5. (Garden - Inorganic - Organic) means we only use natural fertilizer — we never use chemicals.
6. Farmers (plant - harvest - raise) vegetables, then eat or sell them.
7. We (grow - make - do) crops to eat.
8. People buy and (sell - grow - make) things at the market.
9. They only use natural (soil - fertilizer - water). They never use chemicals.
10. Roof gardens help (clean - wash - sweep) the air in the city.
11. People who live in one neighborhood are local (foreigners - residents - tourists).
12. Our apartment is on the sixteenth (flour - flower - floor).
13. He is (sad - angry - selfish). He wants everything for himself.
14. They plant a lot of areas and make them (yellow - green - blue).
15. He got on the train at the (bus - railway - taxi) station.

GRAMMAR REVISION

14 Choose the correct answer:

1. He doesn't often (see - sees - saw) his friends at weekends.
2. How often do you (work - working - works) in the community garden?
3. Soha (never - doesn't - does) helps in the kitchen.
4. Ahmed (is always - always is - has always) good to his friends.
5. How (often - old - many) does she visit her grandma?
6. She visits her grandpa (two - twice - one) a week.
7. Amr (rarely - always - often) plays football. He doesn't like sports.
8. Nadine's grandparents (live - lives - living) in Cairo.

9. How does she (gets - got - get) home from work?
10. What does Ola (do - did - does) at Eid Al-Adha?
11. What (are - does - do) Marwa's plans for the weekend?
12. She (is - has - does) a gymnastics lesson on Sunday.
13. There (is - are - were) a big gymnastics competition in our region.
14. Dates (have - had - has) a lot of sugar in them.
15. She (has usually - usually has - usually does) cheese for breakfast.
16. I (sometimes play - play sometimes - sometimes plays) tennis at the weekend.
17. Donia and Wael (never are - are never - don't) late for school.
18. I don't like chicken. I (often - never - always) eat it.
19. I (walk usually - usually walks - usually walk) to work.
20. She (always pass - always passes - passes always) her exams.
21. He (never - doesn't - don't) goes to bed late.
22. She (always studies - study always - always study) after class.
23. We (often goes - often go - go often) shopping in the city center.
24. Our teacher (never give - gives never - never gives) us homework on weekends.

15 **Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:**

"A day you spent with your friends"

▶ Ideas to help you: **park - bus - enjoy - play - eat - drink - home - tired - happy**

....

....

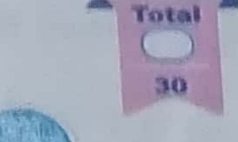
....

....

....

Unit 1 Test 1

لما الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)



1. Mini Forest is an organization which (plans - sells - plants) small areas of trees in the middle of our cities.
2. These special green areas help people enjoy (nature - zoo - class).
3. These green areas help our (wildlife - neighborhood - gardens) like plants, animals and other living things.

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. We can .... twenty kilos of vegetables a year.
2. .... gardens also help clean the air in the city.
3. Roof gardens are a great place to meet people and .... friends.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. He (never - didn't - doesn't - don't) goes to work at night.
2. I like boxing. I (watch usually - usually watches - usually watch - watches usually) it on TV.
3. When you're not (serious - active - selfish - helpful), good things happen.
4. They plant trees and they carefully look (for - up - after - like) them until they become a small forest.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. We always work hard to	a) plants in our projects.
2. We never grow foreign	b) to make the old railway into a big, long park.
3. The selfish giant doesn't	c) shopping in the city center.
4. Some local residents decided	d) find the best urban locations for our forests.
5. We often go	e) want to share his garden.
	f) of different kinds of plants and animals.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Uncle Fathi was born in Tanta in 1985. He moved to Alexandria in 2007. He has been living there since then. He works in a big school. He has been teaching English since he was twenty three years old. He helps his students and sometimes takes them to the computer lab to make his lesson interesting. He is married and has two sons and a daughter. In his free time, he reads useful stories to his children.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "there" refers to (Tanta - Alexandria - school - village).
2. Uncle Fathi has (one - two - three - four) children.

B Answer these questions::

3. How old is uncle Fathi? ▶ ....
4. What does uncle Fathi do in his free time? ▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. usually - His - beautiful - is - garden. ▶ ....
2. sports - use - the - park - People - for. ▶ ....
3. tall - the garden - are - There - in - trees. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- what dish does amr like to have on friday ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Fady: (5Ms)

Tell him about your home, house or apartment, what you like about it and about your neighborhood. Your email address is selim@hotmail.com and your friend's email is fady@outlook.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

Revision on Unit 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

takes – who – which - boring - where

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series ① .... is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it ② .... place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world ③ .... humans live because the Earth is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey ④ .... wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

touch - friendly - pets - fur - teeth - claws

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft ① .... which is nice to ② .... They are clean and calm animals which are usually ③ .... It is true that cats have sharp ④ .... and teeth, but they use them when they are scared.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

buildings - find - modern - map - proud

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are ① .... of. We are proud of our new, modern ② .... and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the ③ .... and ④ .... out where the main buildings are, and what we use them for.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

noise - hungry - stomach - Hares - carrots

It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. Suddenly, her ① .... makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the ② .... in her kitchen. She's hungry! Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops. What is that ③ ....? Something is moving inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asks Hare. "Stay where you are!" says a loud voice, "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you. ④ .... are my favorite food."

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

calculate - measurements - paint - wall - classroom

Hatem's ① .... wall needs painting. The class ② .... how much ③ .... they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the ④ .... Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.

6 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. How does Hazem feel?	a) try to be calm.
2. Welcome to	b) in my room at home.
3. I have a lot of books	c) he is good at math.
4. He is very clever and	d) He feels a bit nervous.
5. When you feel nervous,	e) our school.
	f) are really organized.

7 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. Students come here for	a) which is nice to touch.
2. Cats are independent,	b) and Hare lies in the grass.
3. It's a sunny day,	c) that noise?
4. Cats are beautiful with soft fur	d) when they are scared.
5. What is	e) their information technology lessons.
	f) so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.

8 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. There are four classrooms and	a) He shows respect to everyone.
2. Friendly means	b) where you can find our computer classrooms.
3. Mustafa is very polite.	c) a fantasy TV series.
4. I'm excited to see	d) helps in the garden.
5. This is the building	e) two new laboratories.
	f) nice to others, helpful.

9 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. yet – books – Do – have – all your – you?

▶ .... ?

2. the – library – keep – We – in – calm – all.

▶ ....

3. does – Karima – How – feel – today?

▶ .... ?

4. on – don't – school – I – to – Fridays – go.

▶ ....

5. OK – everything – Is?

▶ .... ?

6. science – where – the place – This is – study – students.

▶ ....

7. equipment – have – laboratories – These – the – all.

▶ ....

8. exciting – was – party – His – birthday.

▶ ....

9. wear – are – the shoes – These – which – I – to school.

▶ ....

10. school – does – for – Manal – When – wake up?

▶ .... ?

11. math – is – Who – teacher – your?

▶ .... ?

12. can – We – my – share – today – books.

▶ ....

13. pets – favorite – my – are – Cats.

▶ ....

14. series – is – a – Wandaland – TV – fantasy.

▶ ....

10 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. welcome to our school hazem

▶ ....

2. do you have all your books yet ahmed

▶ ....

3. you re really organized basel

▶ ....

4. i love english and arabic
▶ ....
5. i love the story of hare
▶ ....
6. no we don t need to get up early on saturdays
▶ ....
7. lions are not friendly animals
▶ ....
8. amira and huda are going to school next monday
▶ ....
9. cairo is the capital of egypt
▶ ....
10. hello my name is hassan ali
▶ ....

11 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. Come on, I'll (give - share - show) you where the science classroom is.
2. I'm a bit (noisy - organized - messy). I am not sure which textbooks I already have.
3. He's very (lazy - clever - calm), so he is good at math.
4. It's my first day at school and I (feel - have - eat) a bit nervous and shy.
5. Wow! You're really (messy - noisy - organized). I want to be like you.
6. Cats are (independent - noisy - naughty), so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.
7. (Polite - Nervous - Messy) people always show respect to others.
8. Sara is very (messy - friendly - shy). She likes talking to people.
9. These laboratories have all the (equipment - students - teachers) that classes need to do the experiments.
10. Please study the (map - book - notebook) and find out where the main buildings are.
11. Bees are insects which make (butter - honey - milk).
12. Hatem's classroom walls need (writing - painting - drawing).

13. Cats have soft (eyes - fur - teeth) which is nice to touch.
14. For as everybody knows, elephants are (afraid – shy - polite) of mice!
15. Cats are the best (birds - insects - pets) for my brother.

GRAMMAR REVISION

12 Choose the correct answer:

1. Mr. Maged is the man (which - when - who) is always ready to help us.
2. The bank is the place (where - who - what) we keep our money.
3. We always like people (which - who - when) tell the truth.
4. This is the house (what - where - who) Habiba lives.
5. The teacher punished the students (when - who - which) were shouting.
6. There was a princess (who - which - where) lived in a castle.
7. Thank you for the present (who - which - where) you sent me.
8. That is the town (where - when - who) he met his wife for the first time.
9. A school is a place (which - who - where) we can learn.
10. The Nile is the river (who - where - when) we go fishing.
11. Amr was very much (please - pleased - pleasing) with his idea.
12. It would be (interested - interesting - interest) to study about space and science.
13. It is not (surprise - surprised - surprising) that it is raining. It is very cold outside.
14. I was very (boring - tired - tiring), so I went to bed early.
15. His birthday party was (excited - exciting - excite).
16. This noise of the street is very (annoy - annoying - annoyed).
17. The film I watched was very (tired - bored - boring).
18. The new sport he is practicing is (bored - tiring - tired).
19. He is very (boring - tiring - tired) when he finishes doing that sport
20. Kholud was (excite - excited - exciting) about going to the cinema.
21. I like most types of fruit, (and - or - but) I don't like pears.
22. My new school is great, (or - but - and) it's far from my house.
23. We want to go to the beach, (but - and - or) it's raining today.

13 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Hend:

Tell her about your family. Write about your parents, your brothers and your sisters and what each one does daily. Your email address is nancy@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is hend@yahoo.com.

From : ……………………

To : ……………………

Subject : ……………………

…………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………

……………………,

……………………

Unit 2 Test 2

Total 30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Hatem's classroom wall needs (building - painting - mending - fixing).
2. The class (write - think - count - calculate) how much paint they need to paint the wall.
3. They (build - paint - measure - pulls) the wall and write down the measurements.

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. Wandaland is a fantasy TV …………………… .
2. It's …………………… because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda.
3. This is a …………………… where humans live because the Earth is now too hot.

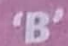


Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. (Organized - Friendly - Shy - Clever) means worried about talking to people, quiet.
2. The nearest whole number of 5.39 is (5:40 - 6.00 - 5.00 - 5.50).
3. The boy (which - when - where - who) is playing tennis is my son.
4. I hate shopping. It is a very (interesting - tiring - interested - tired) week activity.



Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)



'A'	'B'
1. Why does Hazem feel nervous?	a) to sit on under the trees.
2. There are also benches	b) friendly, kind and funny.
3. Which school subject do you like most?	c) The mouse.
4. My friend Nadine is	d) There are four classrooms.
5. Who is in Hare's house?	e) Because it's his first day at school today.
	f) Physical education.



Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Aunt Laila has got two children. Shady is nine years old and his sister Dina is four. Shady always plays with his sister while his mother is cooking, washing or cleaning. He is always nice to his small sister.

One Friday morning, the two children were playing in their bedroom. While their mother was cooking in the kitchen, Dina suddenly began to cry and ran to the kitchen to her mother. Aunt Laila asked her, "Why are you crying, Dina?" Shady has broken my doll," Dina answered, crying more loudly. "How did he break it?" her mother asked. Dina stopped crying and said, "It borke when I hit him on his head with it."



Choose the correct answer:

1. Shady is (four - five - nine) years older than his sister.
2. Dina is the writer's (aunt - cousin - sister).

B Answer these questions::

3. How does aunt Laila do her work at home?
▶ ....

4. Who broke the doll? How?
▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. you - to - my - Do - want - see - school?
▶ .... ?

2. year - go - a - once - We - Alexandria - to.
▶ ....

3. pet - write - Does - about - favorite - her - Ola?
▶ .... ?

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

o who is going to travel to aswan
▶ ....

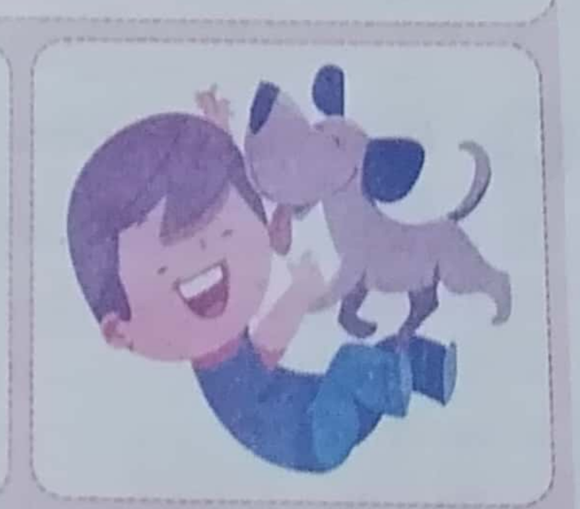
8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"Why you like your pet"

▶ **Ideas to help you:**

- ▶ Describe your pet.
- ▶ Say what you do with it every day.
- ▶ Say how you look after it.
- ▶ Why do you like it?

....
....
....
....
....



Revision on Unit 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

book - helmet - tour - biking - trip

I found some information online about quad ① .... in the desert. You have to wear a ② .... if you ride a quad bike. One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. We can ③ .... the tour at the office in town. If we book the ④ .... today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

characters - action - background - details - understand

Pictures can help you ① .... what a story is about and give you extra ② .... For example, the ③ .... can show you where the ④ .... happens, and the faces of the characters can tell you how they feel at that moment.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

exciting - fantasy - theme park - theaters - rides

When you arrive at the theme park, you are suddenly in a ① .... world – it's really ② .... There's a lot to see and do here. There are amazing ③ .... to try like the rollercoaster, and ④ .... where you can watch shows.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

at - on - get up - homework - library

Hi. I'm Nader. I ① .... with my sister ② .... every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast to the ③ .... 8.15, then we go to school. I don't go sports ④ .... because I have a lot of books at home. I play Wednesday. I do homework every day.





5 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. There is a problem with the freezer.	a) but no longer.
2. Study for about 30 minutes,	b) It's too loud.
3. Can we use a pencil	c) I don't know. Look it up in a dictionary.
4. Please turn the music down,	d) you don't get message from them.
5. What does this word mean, Sherif?	e) It's not working
	f) in the test?



6 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. If we book the tour today,	a) it doesn't work.
2. It's better to study	b) you get good grades.
3. If you don't close the door of the freezer properly,	c) you get one free.
4. When you study hard,	d) it's cheaper.
5. When you buy two T-shirts,	e) the clouds are red.
	f) at the same time each day.

7 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. I'm with my family for my birthday	a) park and ride on a rollercoaster!
2. You can ask your father	b) we are all very friendly.
3. Let's go to the theme	c) biking in the desert in Giza.
4. We can visit	d) surprise at the Carnival!
5. We can go quad	e) if you want any help with your homework.
	f) the Manial Palace Museum first.

8 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. The tour guide will	a) Cairo and Giza.
2. What time will	b) to pay for the tickets.
3. You have to wear a helmet	c) wearing helmets.
4. I need my credit card	d) he meet us?
5. Which two cities do the boys mention?	e) if you ride a quad bike.
	f) meet us at the hotel.

9 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. the forest – through – Deer – Little – runs.
▶ ....

2. Bab Zuweila – the girls – do – What – at – do?
▶ .... ?

3. Sunday – on – like – What – the – is – weather?
▶ .... ?

4. Monday – on – the souks – explore – we – Should?
▶ .... ?

5. my – family – time – I – my – a lot – enjoy – with.
▶ ....

6. Museum – the – to – go – Manial – Let's – Palace.
▶ ....

7. vacation – really – am – our – about – I – excited.
▶ ....

8. We – Cairo – to – travel – can.
▶ ....

9. our – this week – about – I'm – vacation – excited.
▶ ....

10. beautiful – the top – from – view – The – is.
▶ ....

11. Sundays – often – up – late – on – I – get.
▶ ....
12. quad – can – desert – We – biking – in – the – go.
▶ ....
13. will – Where – guide – the – us – meet?
▶ .... ?
14. do – we – can – else – What?
▶ .... ?
15. What – get – we – do – back – time?
▶ .... ?
16. will – guide – meet – The tour – us – the hotel – at.
▶ ....
17. helmets – wearing – is – Everyone.
▶ ....
18. need – I – my credit card – pay for – to – the tickets.
▶ ....

10 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. we celebrate sham el-nessim in spring
▶ ....
2. my english always gets better if i practice it
▶ ....
3. how can we get to giza if we miss the bus
▶ ....
4. how does a rollercoaster work
▶ ....
5. they went on a trip to the red sea
▶ ....
6. i m having a party next thursday
▶ ....
7. let s go to alexandria in august
▶ ....

8. are there big parks in cairo

▶ ....

9. my brother doesn t like carnivals

▶ ....

10. there are many buses from luxor to aswan

▶ ....

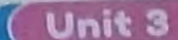
11 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. Let's go to the carnival and (drive - ride - run) on a rollercoaster.
2. When you have regular breaks, you (concentrate - forget - listen) more.
3. We (make - celebrate - do) Sham El-Nessem in spring.
4. Great news! We are (doing - having - hanging) a party on my birthday.
5. If we book now, we're sure to (buy - get - sell) seats.
6. We can (draw - take - paint) photos at the Manial Palace Museum for my school project.
7. The tablet (jumps - turns - switches off) if you press this button.
8. Fatma is afraid of (width - length - heights). She doesn't want to climb up.
9. In the evening, we can watch the (sunrise - sunset - sunshine).
10. Let's (plan - think - make) some activities for the trip.
11. People's brains (work - forget - visit) better if they have a regular routine.
12. Dad and I want to go to the simulation (sea - theater - river) to see the show.
13. I don't want to (walk - climb - ride) that high mountain.
14. My father felt (proud - angry - worried) when I got high marks.

GRAMMAR REVISION

12 Choose the correct answer:

1. If you press the button, the tablet (switch - switched - switches) off.
2. Does your aunt always make a cake when you (visits - are visiting - visit) her?
3. If he (haven't - doesn't have - has) enough money, he can't buy that expensive car.
4. We can't go to Alexandria if we (missed - miss - misses) the train.



5. If it rains, I always (takes - will take - take) an umbrella.
6. When the weather is nice, I (go - would go - goes) to the park.
7. If we (hurry - don't hurry - aren't hurry), we'll miss the train.
8. They (would visit - can visit - visit) us when they come to Cairo.
9. If you don't know the answer, (ask - will ask - can ask) your teacher.
10. My sister's birthday is (at - on - in) March.
11. We will meet our friends (at - in - on) lunchtime.
12. My wedding will be (on - at - in) April 6th.
13. We will visit our grandpa (in - at - on) the weekend.
14. I don't get up early (in - at - on) Fridays.
15. I usually go to bed (at - on - in) 10 o'clock.

13 **Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:**

"A week you spent in Sharm El-Sheikh"

Ideas to help you: **nice - beaches - tourists - diving - coral reefs - sun - fresh air**

....

....

....

....

....

....



Total ___ / 30

Unit 3 Test 3

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.



1 **Listen and choose the correct answer:** (3Ms)



1. If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can (play - read - go - remember) better in the afternoon.
2. It's helpful if you (give - write - take - help) down a list of what you want to do each time you study.
3. You can (dive - drive - check - leave) the point you finish off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!



2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. Fatima is very ...., and her face is white.
2. The girls reach the top after a long ....
3. Amal told Fatima to breathe ....

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

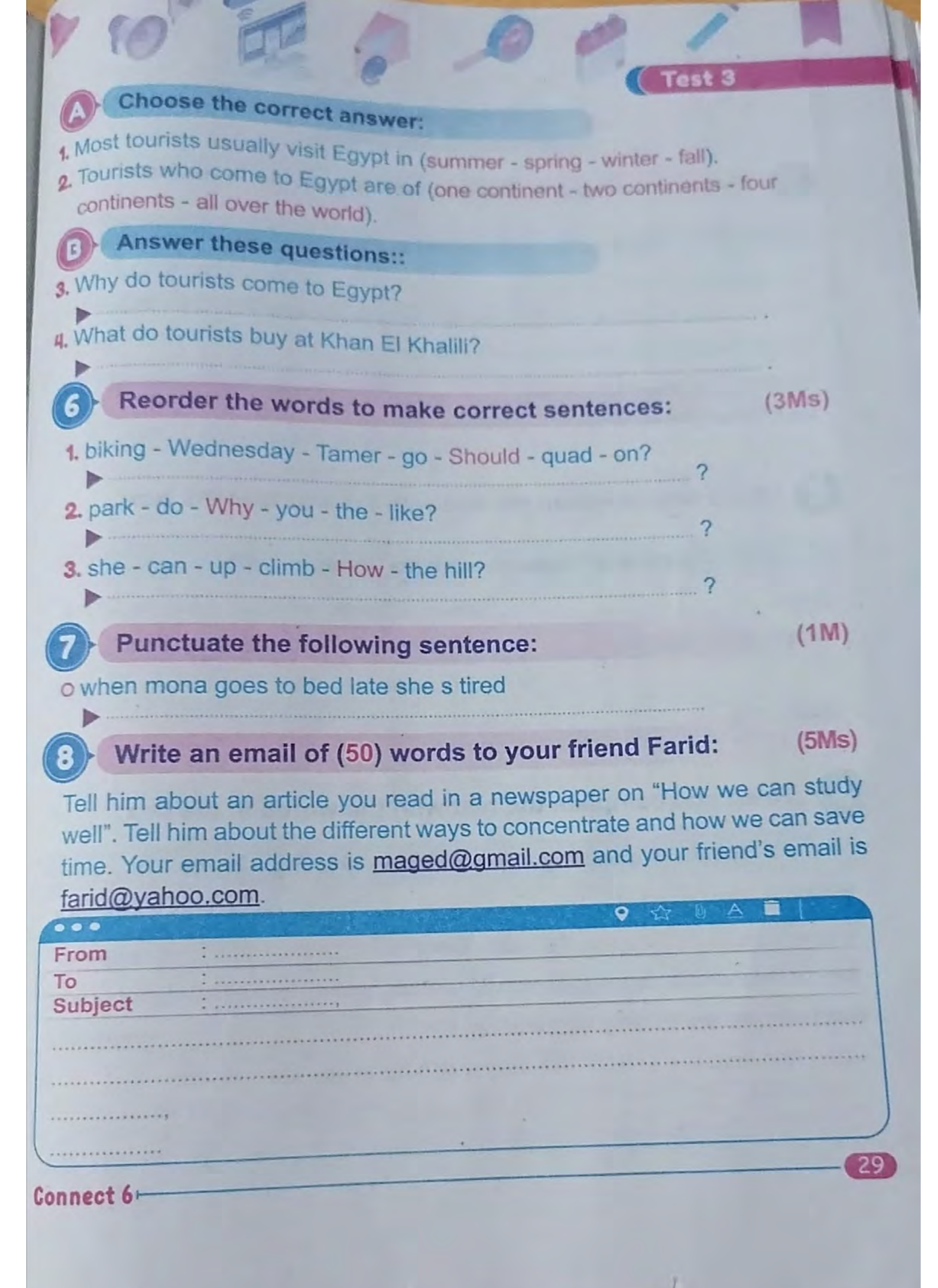
1. If you find my keys, please (to call - will call - calls - call) this number.
2. They went on a trip to the North Coast (on - of - at - in) July.
3. When you feel tired, you (can go - could go - would go - goes) to bed early.
4. Sharm El-Sheikh is a (busy - empty - dirty - polluted) city by the Red Sea. Lots of people go there every year.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. Why don't we try new places?	a) I get up at 7 o'clock.
2. Little Deer goes to the lake	b) I once found a spider in our bathroom!
3. When do you get up on school days?	c) Today is my birthday.
4. When you arrive at the park,	d) Yes, good idea.
5. When was the last time you faced something you feared?	e) and has a drink.
	f) you are suddenly in a world of fantasy.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Every winter, thousands of people from every part of Europe, America and Asia come to spend their holidays in our great country, Egypt. They are tourists who come to enjoy the fine weather and sunshine of Egypt when it is very cold in their countries. They like to visit Luxor and Aswan. They like to see the ancient treasures of Egypt, so they like to visit the Egyptian Museum. They aslo visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. Before they return home, they like to go to Khan El Khalili to buy some souvenirs.



A Choose the correct answer:

1. Most tourists usually visit Egypt in (summer - spring - winter - fall).
2. Tourists who come to Egypt are of (one continent - two continents - four continents - all over the world).

B Answer these questions::

3. Why do tourists come to Egypt?
▶ ....
4. What do tourists buy at Khan El Khalili?
▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. biking - Wednesday - Tamer - go - Should - quad - on?
▶ .... ?
2. park - do - Why - you - the - like?
▶ .... ?
3. she - can - up - climb - How - the hill?
▶ .... ?

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

o when mona goes to bed late she s tired
▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Farid: (5Ms)

Tell him about an article you read in a newspaper on "How we can study well". Tell him about the different ways to concentrate and how we can save time. Your email address is maged@gmail.com and your friend's email is farid@yahoo.com.

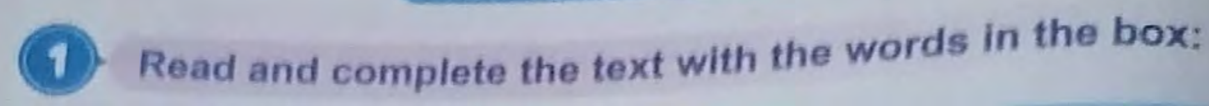
From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....

....

................,

....



Revision on Unit 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cycling - worry - running - exams - free

I'm studying hard for my ① .... at the moment. But don't ② ...., I'm not spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercises too, so I go ③ .... every morning in the park. I'm also ④ .... on the weekends with my dad. Riding bikes is fun.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

birthday - food - countries - noodles - life

Some ① .... have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long ② .... or peaches on their ③ .... Why? Because they think that these can give you a long ④ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

local - organizing - celebration - inviting - invite

Hi Maha. I am writing to ① .... you to our school's Mother's Day ② .... this year. We are ③ .... a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the ④ .... community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. Amr has a very nice playlist on his mobile.	a) streamers for Hala's party.
2. Give me the scissors	b) the birthday cake.
3. I'm hanging up the	c) people are coming.
4. Guests are people who	d) to cut the string.
5. They're decorating	e) We can play it in the party.
	f) you invite to your home

5 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. We are inviting people from the local	a) It's really hot there.
2. Egyptian people often sing	b) community who often help our school.
3. What's the weather like in Aswan?	c) the documentary is good too.
4. I love history books and	d) at his house after the exams.
5. Amr is organizing a party	e) songs at birthday parties.
	f) do this with one breath!

6 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. In China, people like to eat	a) your news?
2. Birthdays are	b) to our school's Mother's Day celebration.
3. What are	c) you reading?
4. I'm writing to invite you	d) long noodles or peaches on their birthday.
5. We have an amazing prize	e) celebrated all over the world.
	f) for the best costume.

7 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. the party – We – you – hope – attend – can.
 ▶ ....
2. coming – are – people – many – How?
 ▶ .... ?
3. Can – balloons – you – up – some – blow?
 ▶ .... ?
4. please – phone, – I – your – Can – borrow?
 ▶ .... ?
5. the party – the cake – you – for – Will – bake?
 ▶ .... ?
6. are – playing – They – with – the balloons – football.
 ▶ ....
7. an armchair – reading – Amira – in – is – a book.
 ▶ ....
8. me – the glue, – Can – pass – please – you?
 ▶ .... ?
9. a special day – the event – are – We – for – organizing.
 ▶ ....
10. for – party – birthday – the – is – Who?
 ▶ .... ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. do you often go to birthday parties
 ▶ ....
2. what are you doing youssef
 ▶ ....
3. we can ask adel to make a playlist
 ▶ ....
4. i don t like chocolate cake
 ▶ ....
5. mr yousry is blowing up the balloon
 ▶ ....
6. we are practicing for the football game on sunday
 ▶ ....

7. will you feed the cat please
▶ ....

8. we don t know how to make a cake
▶ ....

9. yes marwa bought a new car
▶ ....

10. no I don t think heba will come
▶ ....

9 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. My parents usually go to our school's Mother's Day (information - celebration - decoration).
2. Children like to (hang up - blow out - let off) the candles on their birthday cakes.
3. We are inviting people from the local (buildings - forest - community).
4. Children need an adult to (hang up - blow up - let off) the fireworks.
5. The cook is (hanging - blowing - decorating) the birthday cake.
6. I'm (hanging up - decorating - inviting) the streamers for my sister's birthday party.
7. Are you (sending - decorating - hanging) the invitations?
8. Dalida is going to make a (fireworks - playlist - streamers) on her phone.
9. (CD - DVD - RSVP) means please reply.
10. There's (at - about - on) 4 liters of water in total.
11. (Adults - Babies - Kids) are fully grown people, not children.
12. We always invite (guests - animals - birds) to birthday parties.
13. I like eating (noodles - traditions - countries).
14. We very much hope you can (come - attend - go) the party.

GRAMMAR REVISION

10 Choose the correct answer:

1. I (is - are - am) not having fun with Ali.
2. (Is - Are - Am) Amr and his friends playing now?
3. Laila (enjoying - enjoy - enjoys) her time in London.
4. She's (wear - wears - wearing) a beautiful dress.

5. Where (am - are - is) Mona and her father staying?
6. Can you (give - giving - gives) me your mobile to call my mom?
7. Will you (bake - are baking - bakes) the cake for the party?
8. (Is - Are - Will) Noha and Hany trying to dance?
9. (Will - Are - Is) you lend me your pen?
10. I (am - am not - isn't) studying these days. We are in summer vacation.
11. Why (is - are - am) your brother shouting?
12. She (sing - is singing - sings) on the stage now.
13. Girls (is - are - will) helping their mother to make a cake.
14. Where (are - is - will) Selim and Osama playing football?
15. Look! They (practice - are practicing - practices) hard the next game.

11 **Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:**

"Mother's Day Celebration"

Ideas to help you:

- What the celebration is for
- When we celebrate it
- What present you buy for mom



Unit 4 Test 4

Total ( ) / 30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.



1 **Listen and choose the correct answer:** (3Ms)



1. In your email you ask me what I'm (writing - doing - reading).
2. The book is taking (pages - ages - stages) because I'm a slow reader.
3. I love (story - history - study) books and the documentary is good, too.

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. Children everywhere like .... food.
2. Children like to .... out the candles on their birthday cakes.
3. In India, the candles are left to ....

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

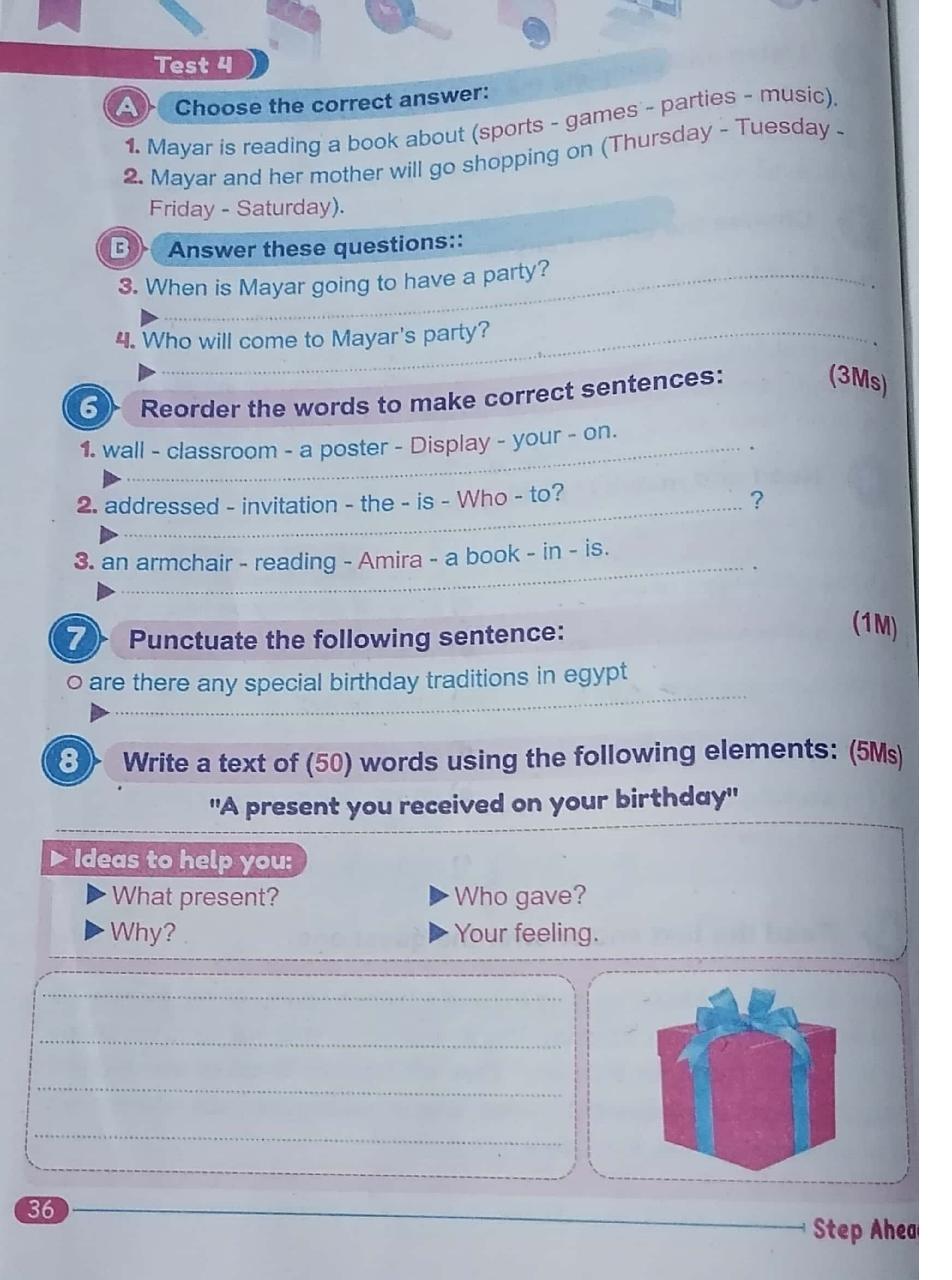
1. If you don't blow out the candles they (burn - get bigger - turn on - decorate).
2. Amira! Are you (sending - spending - inviting - blowing) the invitations?
3. What (am - are - is - does) your brother reading now?
4. Is he (take - taking - takes - took) photos at the moment?

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. How many liters of water	a) songs at birthday parties.
2. My dad is working in France	b) from the clothes they are wearing.
3. My mom always makes a	c) a new project.
4. Egyptian people often sing	d) so we miss him.
5. I'm working on	e) do you use when you take a shower?
	f) cake when it's my birthday.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Next Thursday, Mayar is going to have a birthday party. All her friends will come to the party. On Tuesday, Mayar and her mother will go to the shops to buy some foods for the party. They will buy lots of cakes and sweets. Mayar has got a book about games. She is reading the book and she will choose some games. It will be a nice party.



Test 4

A **Choose the correct answer:**

1. Mayar is reading a book about (sports - games - parties - music).
2. Mayar and her mother will go shopping on (Thursday - Tuesday - Friday - Saturday).

B **Answer these questions::**

3. When is Mayar going to have a party?
▶ ....
4. Who will come to Mayar's party?
▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. wall - classroom - a poster - Display - your - on.
▶ ....
2. addressed - invitation - the - is - Who - to?
▶ .... ?
3. an armchair - reading - Amira - a book - in - is.
▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

○ are there any special birthday traditions in egypt
▶ ....

8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"A present you received on your birthday"

▶ Ideas to help you:

▶ What present?
▶ Who gave?
▶ Why?
▶ Your feeling.

....
....
....
....

Revision on Unit 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

journey - island - port - weather - possible

Today was a long, boring, day with terrible ① .... The ship didn't leave the ② ...., so my journey to the mysterious island wasn't ③ .... I can see the ④ .... through my telescope. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees and there are green mountains at its land center.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dromedaries - village - water - caravan - dunes

The dromedaries in the ① .... moved slowly up and down the ② ...., swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last ③ .... before the empty wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no ④ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

trip - felucca - sails - travel - skills

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A ① .... is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the ② .... to do it. The ③ .... was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white ④ .... which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.

4 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

favorite - diary - visiting - remember - vacation

Rana : What are you reading Engy?

Engy : Oh hi, Rana. It is my travel ① .... I want to ② .... my family's ③ .... in Croatia.

Rana : What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

Engy : I think it was ④ .... Marco Polo museum.

5 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. Who was Marco Polo?	a) on board the felucca.
2. The journey was difficult.	b) to control or change.
3. He rode a camel	c) It took years!
4. We had a delicious lunch	d) huge, yellow waves.
5. Sand dunes are like	e) all the way to China.
	f) He was an Italian explorer.

6 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. What was your favorite	a) that's sticky when wet.
2. A team of archaeologists	b) to help create new ideas.
3. The Nok people's culture	c) thing about the vacation?
4. Clay is a type of earth	d) there was a very surprising discovery.
5. Almost 100 years ago,	e) is still a mystery today.
	f) went to the area to find out more.

7 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'	'B'
1. I had quite a relaxing	a) I went on a felucca on the Nile.
2. The weather will be good	b) is damaged and dangerous.
3. Today I had an amazing experience.	c) and there was heavy rain.
4. The bridge in the village	d) to send his luggage to Japan.
5. The weather was still bad	e) with no rain.
	f) sleep in my cabin last night.

8 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. the - Nile - on - River - went - I - on a felucca.
▶ ....
2. the captain - does - describe - How - she - of the boat?
▶ .... ?
3. pyramids - think of - the writer - What - the great - did?
▶ .... ?
4. stopped - things - to see - We - incredible - some.
▶ ....
5. leave - the sun - will - when - comes up - The ship.
▶ ....
6. the captain - news - good - was - from - There.
▶ ....
7. this place - very - in - seems - Time - slowly - to move.
▶ ....
8. for - long walks - went - the ship - around - I.
▶ ....
9. in the day - spend - his time - How - the writer - does?
▶ .... ?
10. island - explore - the mysterious - can - I.
▶ ....

9 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. how does the writer describe the island
▶ ....
2. the water in the sea wasn t warm
▶ ....
3. which egyptian animal does it look like
▶ ....
4. nader and walid were in my class last year
▶ ....
5. we had a great time at the carnival
▶ ....
6. the nok people s tools were made of stone
▶ ....
7. did uncle hazem travel to england last july
▶ ....
8. yes that s true
▶ ....
9. winters in egypt aren t very cold
▶ ....
10. he went to china eight hundred years ago
▶ ....

10 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. Marco Polo went on a long (flight - voyage - drive) by sea.
2. He stopped and went (cross - pass - across) the desert.
3. He (drove - rode - flew) a camel to China.
4. The (inventor - explorer - worker) always wants to know new things about new places.
5. The Nok culture in Nigeria is still a (mystery - story - book) today. No one knows a lot about it.
6. Antarctica is a cold (city - continent - country).

7. (Axe - Tool - Clay) is a type of earth that is sticky when wet.
8. The sand (drones - dunes - downs) were like huge yellow waves.
9. This is a page from an 18th century writer's (daily - dairy - diary).
10. I can fly my kite when there's (wind - rain - lightning).
11. We had a (mysterious - delicious - relaxing) lunch yesterday.
12. The travelers found a (pleasure - voyage - treasure) on an island. It was very expensive.
13. The place was (quit - quite - quiet) and peaceful.
14. The (inspiration - imagination - transportation) is an example others use to help create new ideas.
15. (Clay - Axes - Tools) are things we use to cut trees and wood.
16. When something is (advanced - ancient - old), it's far ahead in development.
17. When someone makes a/an (experiment - inspiration - discovery), he finds something that people didn't know about.

GRAMMAR REVISION

11 Choose the correct answer:

1. We didn't (have - had - has) a vacation this year.
2. Where did you (found - founded - find) your book?
3. My mother (is - were - was) a clever student when she was young.
4. (Were - Was - Is) your friend here yesterday?
5. The plane (fly - was fly - flew) high in the sky.
6. I finished my homework and my father (reads - read - reading) a book.
7. Did Omar (catch - caught - catches) the bus last night?
8. My brothers (doesn't go - aren't go - didn't go) out.
9. What did Habiba (does - do - did) last week?
10. Did your sister (wins - won - win) the first prize?
11. (Was - Did - Were) Saleh and his family at the club last Friday?

12. Did the thief (told - tell - tells) the truth?
13. They (rode - rides - were ride) a camel all the way home.
14. How did people (got - get - gets) to India in those days?
15. Marco Polo (sail - sailed - was sail) to Korcula by ship.

12 **Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:**

"An amazing journey"

Ideas to help you: where to - with whom - why amazing - spent time - activities - see - souvenirs

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 5 Test 5

Total
30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer:** (3Ms)





1. A team of (vets - doctors - archaeologists) went to the area of Nok to find out more.
2. There were also iron and stone (sports - farming - sailing) tools.
3. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very (advanced - similar - around) culture.

2 **Listen and complete the sentences:** (3Ms)



1. I had quite a relaxing sleep in my .... last night.
2. This morning, I had breakfast with the others on the ....
3. In the afternoon, there was good news from the ....

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. (Archaeologists - Explorers - Inventors - Farmers) are people who dig the ground to look for monuments.
2. The boat had two white (seeds - seas - seats - sails) which moved gently in the wind.
3. (Were - Did - Was - is) your father able to swim when he was younger?
4. Did Ali (has - have - had - having) his dinner?

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. They found sculptures of	a) It's my travel diary.
2. What are you reading, Injy?	b) the other name of the camels.
3. The museum had a lot of	c) were beautiful clay sculptures.
4. The dromedaries are	d) He didn't believe them.
5. There were many strange legends about this desert.	e) humans under the ground.
	f) objects from ancient China.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

A poor farmer was working on his small farm. He slept under a tree and had a dream. He found a map in an old piece of cloth. It was showing where a treasure "gold and jewels" was hidden in the desert. He rode his donkey and went to the desert carrying tools to dig in the sand. He found the place and began to dig, and after half an hour, he found the box. He got it out and opened it. It was full of gold. He asked himslef, "What would I do? What would I buy? A big house? A car or what?" Then he heard someone calling,"Wake up, wake up, your lunch is ready, poor husband," his wife said.

Test 5

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to (the desert - the tree - the box).
2. The farmer had a dream (before - after - then) he slept.

B Answer these questions:

3. Who woke the farmer?

▶ ....

4. Did the farmer really find a treasure?

▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. does - What - desert - the - like - look?

▶ .... ?

2. the moment - at - am - hard - I - studying.

▶ ....

3. Alexandria - like - the - What - weather - in - is.

▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

○ my friend asser is organizing a big party next april

▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Amr: (5Ms)

Tell him about a day in your diary, when you got up. What you did until you went to bed. Your email address is amgad@gmail.com and your friend's email address is amr@outlook.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

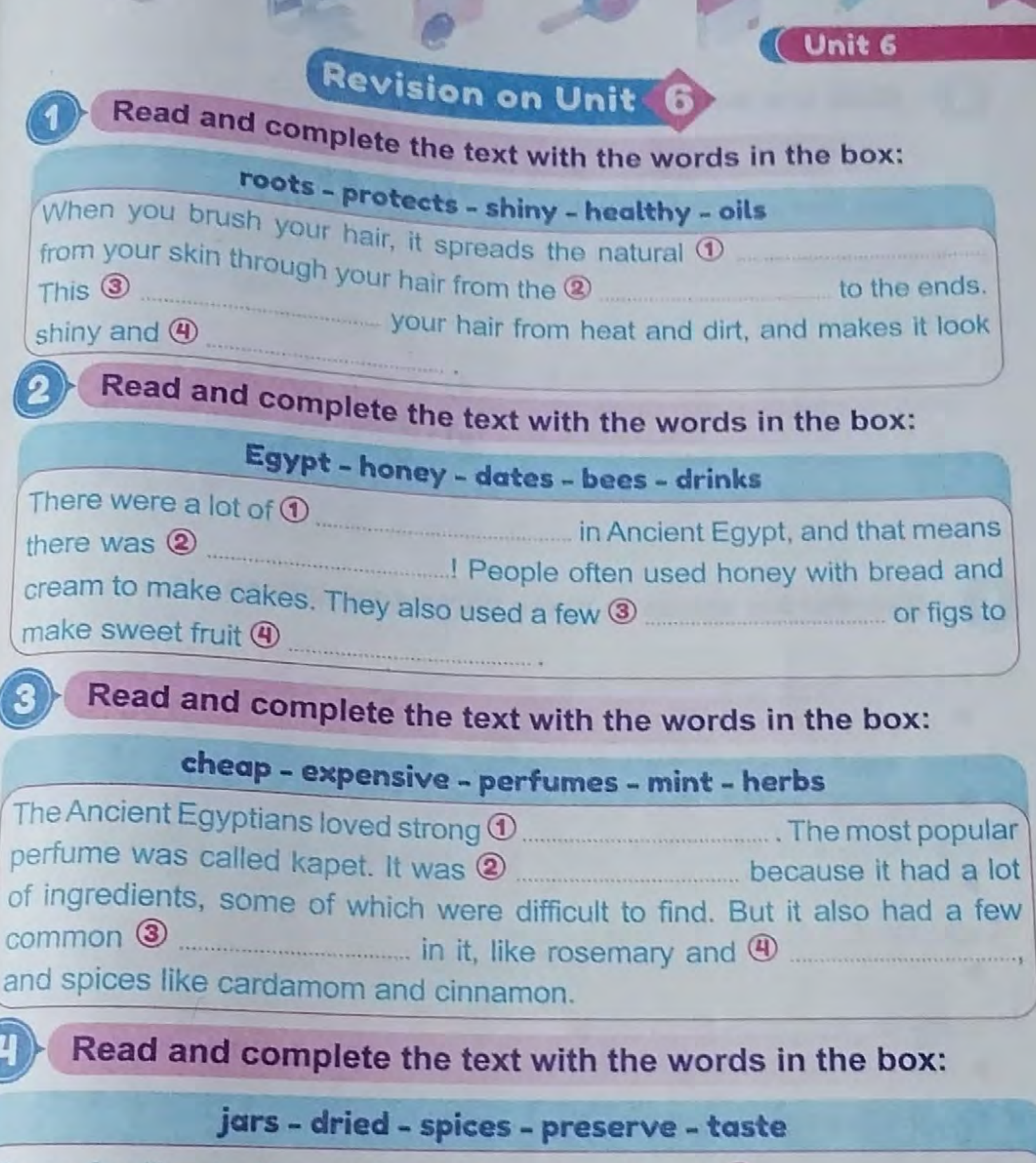
....

....

..................,

....

Revision on Unit 6



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

roots - protects - shiny - healthy - oils

When you brush your hair, it spreads the natural ① .... from your skin through your hair from the ② .... to the ends. This ③ .... your hair from heat and dirt, and makes it look shiny and ④ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Egypt - honey - dates - bees - drinks

There were a lot of ① .... in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was ② ....! People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few ③ .... or figs to make sweet fruit ④ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cheap - expensive - perfumes - mint - herbs

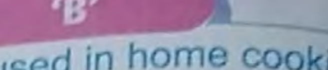
The Ancient Egyptians loved strong ① .... The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was ② .... because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common ③ .... in it, like rosemary and ④ ...., and spices like cardamom and cinnamon.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

jars - dried - spices - preserve - taste

Some families in Ancient Egypt knew how to use ① .... and herbs to make their cooking ② .... better, and they also knew how to ③ .... food. For example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used ④ .... to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

5 Read and match (A) with (B):



'A'	'B'
1. To clean their teeth,	a) that are used in home cooking and restaurants.
2. To keep their mouths fresh all day,	b) in Ancient Egypt use kapet for?
3. Egypt is famous for its spices	c) the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.
4. We don't only use spices to cook food	d) when you were asleep.
5. What did some leaders	e) we also use them in perfume and medicine.
	f) Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. eat - to - Egyptians - well - liked - Ancient.
   ▶ ....
2. the - need - lemons - for - We - a few - recipe.
   ▶ ....
3. my - like - a lot of - I - tea - milk - in.
   ▶ ....
4. spices - to - food - We - cook - use.
   ▶ ....
5. sold - stores - are - Spices - in.
   ▶ ....
6. Egypt - Tourists - when they - souvenirs - buy - visit.
   ▶ ....
7. pepper - in it - salt - had - Their toothpaste - and.
   ▶ ....
8. bowl - there - the - any - Is - butter - in?
   ▶ ....

9. money - a little - my - mom's bag - There's - in.
▶ ....

10. laboratory - some - the - are - students - There - in.
▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. there isn t any bread in the kitchen
▶ ....
2. the ancient egyptians loved strong perfumes
▶ ....
3. how did some leaders in ancient egypt use kapet
▶ ....
4. how much milk does hend want in your coffee
▶ ....
5. mint tea is a traditional drink in north africa
▶ ....
6. do you always brush your teeth
▶ ....
7. no i am not going to brush my teeth
▶ ....
8. omar works in a bakery next to our house
▶ ....

8 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. This recipe is (famous - well known - secret). No one knows it.
2. You should (press - squeeze - push) lemons to make lemon juice.
3. (Heat - Press - Squeeze) the wax to melt it.
4. Tourists buy (souvenirs - tickets - foods) to remember their visit to Egypt.
5. I always wash my hands with water and (shampoo - cream - soap).
6. Egypt is famous for its (spaces - species - spices) that are used for cooking.
7. Laila's perfume (smells - tastes - feels) nice.
8. Can you (poor - pour - power) me a cup of tea, please?

9. It's very important to save personal (car - care - core) routines.
10. Spices are sold in (stories - storms - stores) on the streets.
11. She is wearing a (crown - T-shirt - hat). She looks like a queen.
12. He was (nervous - organized - astonished) when he saw us. It was a surprise to him.

GRAMMAR REVISION

9 Choose the correct answer:

1. How (many - a few - much) money do you need?
2. She's got (some - a lot - much) interesting friends.
3. Hurry up! We don't have (many - a few - much) time.
4. I need (a little - a few - many) sugar in my tea.
5. We need some (lemons - potatoes - eggs) for the juice.
6. There are a (little - many - few) shops near my house.
7. There are (some - a little - much) expensive flats next to the sea.
8. Would you like (some - a few - many) more coffee?
9. Are there (many - a little - a lot) eggs in the fridge?
10. There is (many - a few - much) tea in the cup.
11. There (are - is - was) some oranges on the plate.
12. There (is - are - were) orange juice in the jar.
13. There is (some - a few - many) cheese on the plate.
14. There are (a lot - many - a few) of restaurants in this town.

Unit 6 Test 6



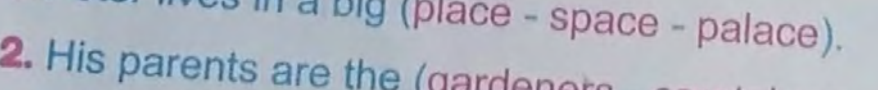
نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

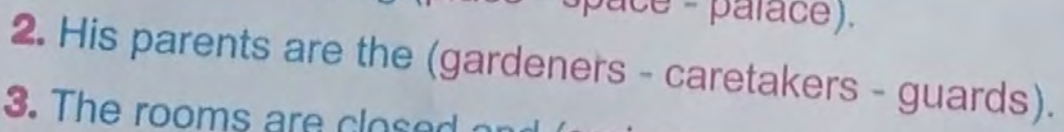


(3Ms)

1. Peter lives in a big (place - space - palace).



2. His parents are the (gardeners - caretakers - guards).



3. The rooms are closed and (serious - mysterious - previous).

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. Egypt is famous for its ....
2. They are used in home cooking and .... all across the country.
3. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many ....

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Egypt is (famous - astonished - clever - organized) for its spices.
2. Ancient Egyptians made (mint - papyrus - wood - perfume) candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.
3. There are some (honey - spices - juice - salt) in the jar.
4. There (isn't - aren't - weren't - wasn't) any milk in the fridge now.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. Please hurry up	a) 450 grams of wax make?
2. Can I have a little	b) did you do yesterday?
3. How many candles does	c) some types of minerals.
4. How much homework	d) do you have?
5. How many brothers and sisters	e) we don't have a lot of time.
	f) sugar in my coffee, please?

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Goha used to go to the village market to sell donkeys. One day, on his way home with his donkeys, he felt tired. He decided to ride one of his donkeys. He counted the donkeys but there were only nine. He got off his donkey and counted them again. This time there were ten. He got back on his donkey and counted them once more. He was surprised. There were only nine. He decided to get off his donkey. He preferred to walk with ten donkeys rather than ride with nine.

Test 6

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Goha was on his way (to the market - to the barn - home - to the field).
2. At last, Goha (walked - rode his donkey - slept - stopped).

B Answer these questions::

3. How many donkeys were there with Goha?
   ▶ ....
4. Why did he decide to ride one of his donkeys at first?
   ▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. yesterday - much homework - did - do - How - you?
   ▶ .... ?
2. Egyptians - their bodies - Ancient - of - care - took.
   ▶ ....
3. Peter - Where - king - does - the - find?
   ▶ .... ?

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- what did ancient egyptians use to take care of themselves ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Selim: (5Ms)

Tell him about your personal care routines and what you use for that. Your e-mail address is maged@gmail.com and your friend's e-mail address is selim@yahoo.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....
....
....
....
....................,
....



Revision Tests



Revision Test 1

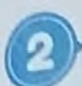
نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.



Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)



1. Mini Forest is a/an (community - company - organization - shop).
2. These special green areas help people enjoy (trees - people - cities - nature).
3. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the (worst - biggest - best - smallest) urban locations for our forest.



Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)



1. When you see it from the air, the Nile valley is in the shape of a ....
2. In the north, where the Nile .... opens into the Delta, it is wide.
3. In the south, where it passes between desert ...., it is narrow.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Mr Ahmed is such a (nervous - shy - helpful - messy) teacher. He always answers all of our extra questions.
2. My birthday is (in - on - at - from) August 1st.
3. How (many - much - old - often) sugar do you want in your cup?
4. There's a (way - road - street - railway) line near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. Does your garden produce vegetables?	a) can you help me?
2. The weather is usually	b) of green spaces.
3. I'm hanging up the streamers,	c) Yes, it did.
4. Little Deer runs	d) sunny in Egypt in summer.
5. New York has a lot	e) Yes, it does.
	f) through the forest.



5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

In the past, life was different. People were poor, and life was difficult, but they were happy. There wasn't a metro. There weren't lots of cars or tall buildings. There were small houses to live in. But there was healthy food to eat. Life was healthy, calm and quiet. They had time to play. They had time to rest. They had time to sit and speak with each other. I think life in the past was happier than life today.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Life was (easy - quiet - bad - noisy) in the past.
2. People were (happy - sad - angry - busy) in the past.

B Answer these questions::

3. Where did people live in the past? ▶ ....
4. Was there a metro in the past? ▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. a lot of – buy – products – care – I – personal. ▶ ....
2. to – Do – my house – you – come – want to? ▶ ....?
3. like - fast – Mariam - food - eating – doesn't. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- do you like reading books ▶ ....

8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"How did Ancient Egyptians like to be clean?"

▶ **Ideas to help you:** perfumes - toothbrush - toothpaste - clean - wash

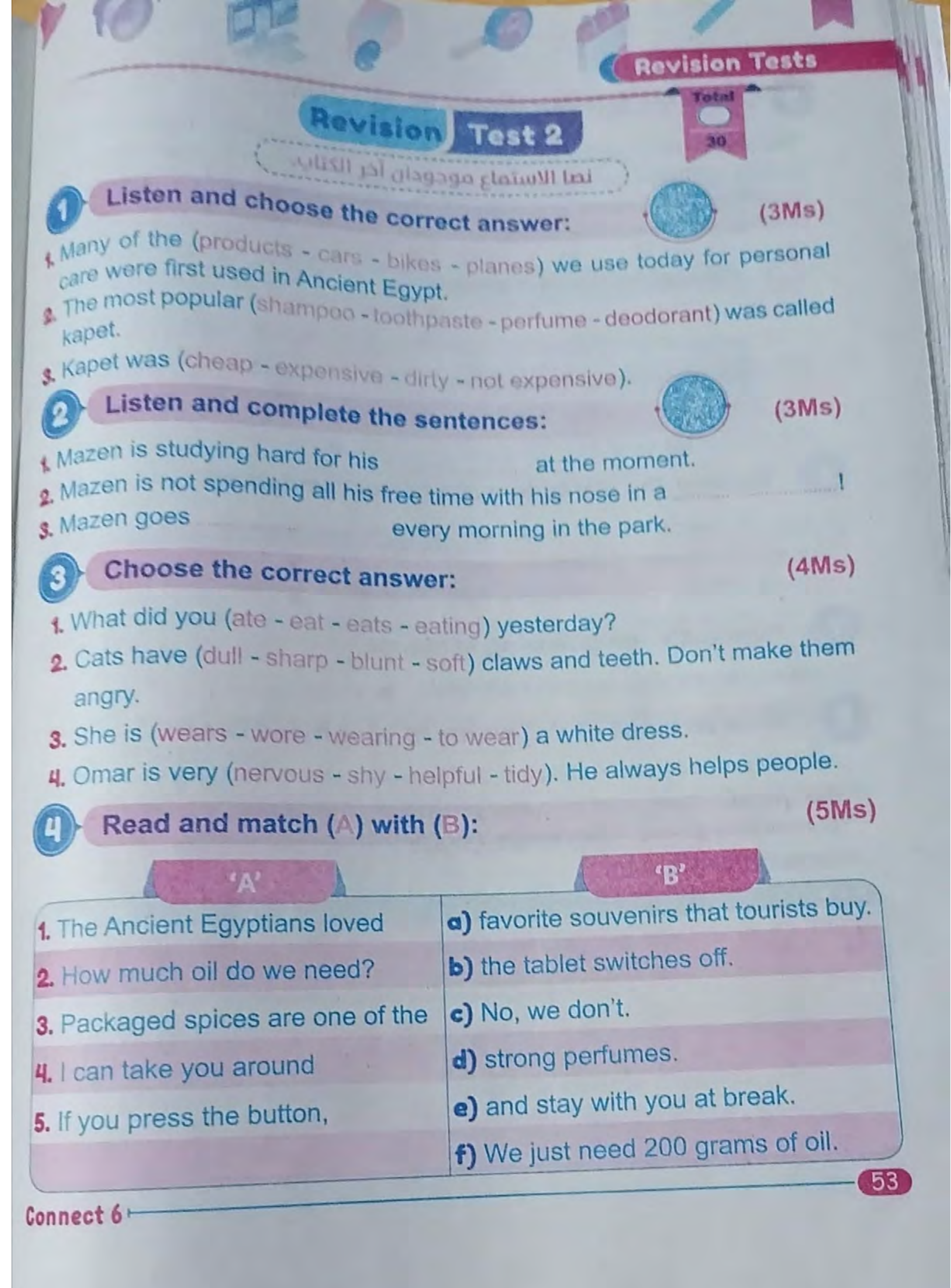
....

....

....

....





Revision Test 2

Total 30

نما الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Many of the (products - cars - bikes - planes) we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt.
2. The most popular (shampoo - toothpaste - perfume - deodorant) was called kapet.
3. Kapet was (cheap - expensive - dirty - not expensive).

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. Mazen is studying hard for his .... at the moment.
2. Mazen is not spending all his free time with his nose in a ....!
3. Mazen goes .... every morning in the park.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. What did you (ate - eat - eats - eating) yesterday?
2. Cats have (dull - sharp - blunt - soft) claws and teeth. Don't make them angry.
3. She is (wears - wore - wearing - to wear) a white dress.
4. Omar is very (nervous - shy - helpful - tidy). He always helps people.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. The Ancient Egyptians loved	a) favorite souvenirs that tourists buy.
2. How much oil do we need?	b) the tablet switches off.
3. Packaged spices are one of the	c) No, we don't.
4. I can take you around	d) strong perfumes.
5. If you press the button,	e) and stay with you at break.
	f) We just need 200 grams of oil.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

The weather in Egypt is usually sunny. But in summer, it's very hot. So we usually go to Alexandria. In winter, it's cold, and it sometimes rains. We sometimes go to Luxor and Aswan in the winter. I like spring. The weather is windy and nice in the spring.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. It's (hot - cold - windy - snowing) in the spring.
2. The weather in Egypt is usually (cloudy - stormy - snowy - sunny).

B Answer these questions::

3. What's the weather like in the summer? ▶ ....
4. Is it wet in winter? ▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. not – a – person – nervous – is – Adel. ▶ ....
2. you – Can – me, – please – help? ▶ ....?
3. does – find – Where – king – the – Peter? ▶ ....?

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

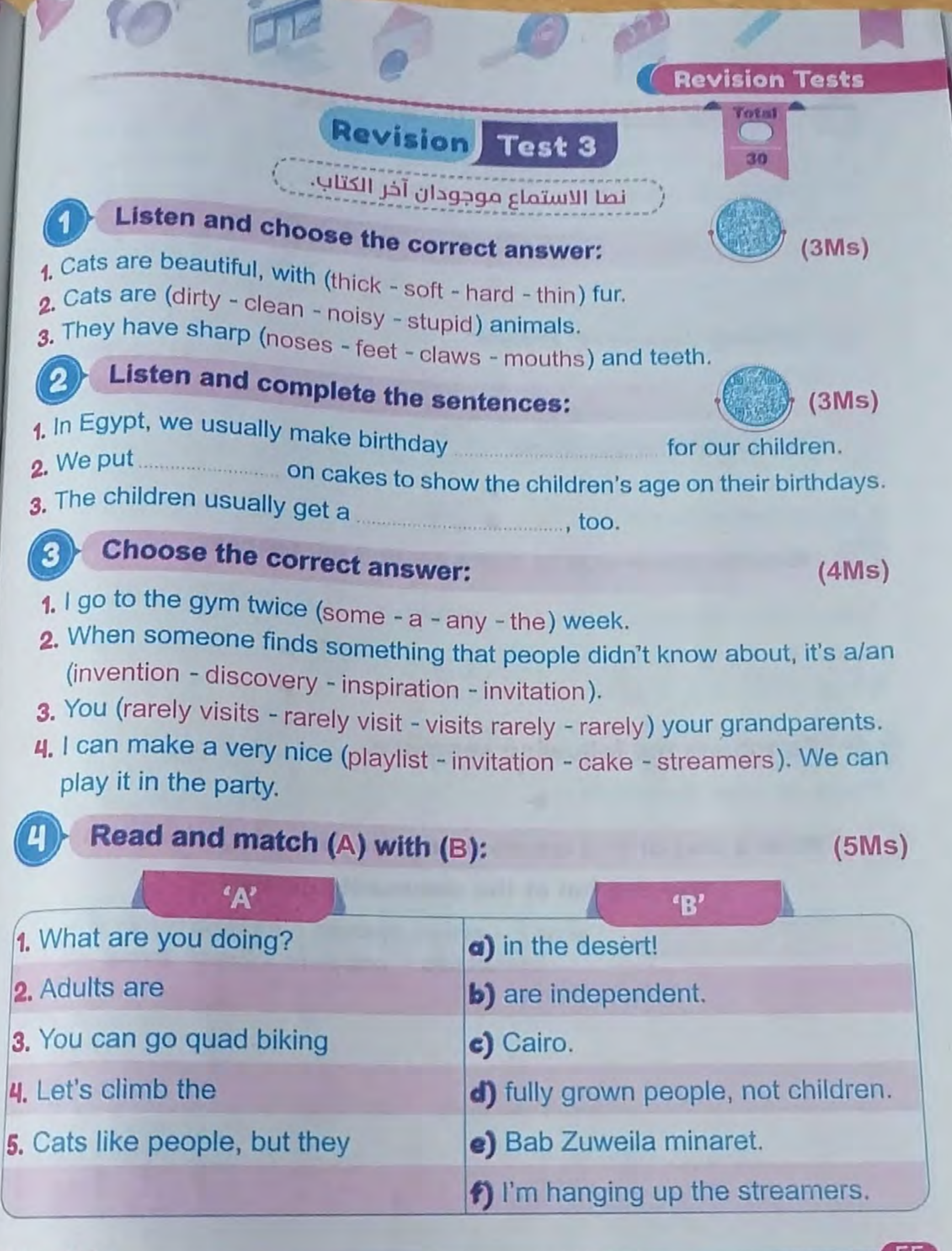
- mohamed salah is a great footballer ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Omar: (5Ms)

mer holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh. Tell him also about the places you visited, what you did there, and who enjoyed the trip with you?
Your email address is mazen@school.net. And your friend's email address is omar@hotmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....



Revision Test 3

Total ___ / 30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Cats are beautiful, with (thick - soft - hard - thin) fur.
2. Cats are (dirty - clean - noisy - stupid) animals.
3. They have sharp (noses - feet - claws - mouths) and teeth.

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. In Egypt, we usually make birthday .... for our children.
2. We put .... on cakes to show the children's age on their birthdays.
3. The children usually get a ...., too.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. I go to the gym twice (some - a - any - the) week.
2. When someone finds something that people didn't know about, it's a/an (invention - discovery - inspiration - invitation).
3. You (rarely visits - rarely visit - visits rarely - rarely) your grandparents.
4. I can make a very nice (playlist - invitation - cake - streamers). We can play it in the party.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. What are you doing?	a) in the desert!
2. Adults are	b) are independent.
3. You can go quad biking	c) Cairo.
4. Let's climb the	d) fully grown people, not children.
5. Cats like people, but they	e) Bab Zuweila minaret.
	f) I'm hanging up the streamers.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Kamel is a farmer. He works hard in his field. When the sun rises, he goes to his field. He grows different kinds of fruit and vegetables. He hopes he will be able to buy a cart and a donkey to ride it to his field and back home. It takes him an hour to walk to his field. He is kind to everyone in his village. He has a son and a daughter. His wife helps him with his work.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. He grows different kinds of fruit and (metal - gold - vegetables - sculptures).
2. Kamel goes to his work in the (morning - afternoon - evening - night).

B Answer these questions::

3. What does Kamel hope? ▶ ....
4. What does he grow? ▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. do – eat – cheese – you – How often? ▶ ....
2. didn't – My dad – to – his work – go – yesterday. ▶ ....
3. She – to – club – goes – the – sometimes. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- no i don t like these toys ▶ ....

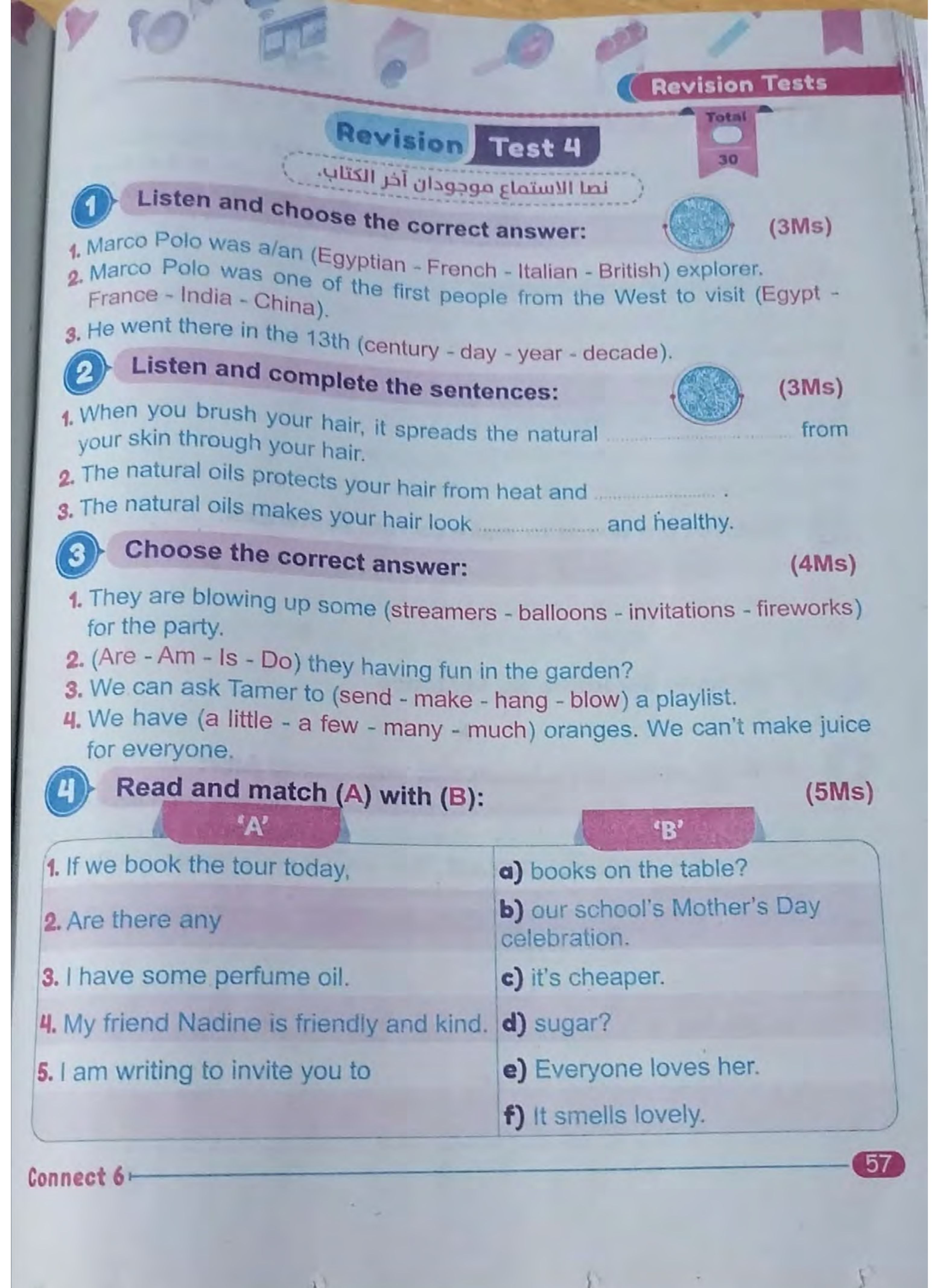
8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"Having fun at the community garden"

▶ **Ideas to help you:** plant – green spaces – neighborhood – tomatoes – peppers – fresh food

....
....
....
....
....





Total
30

Revision Test 4

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Marco Polo was a/an (Egyptian - French - Italian - British) explorer.
2. Marco Polo was one of the first people from the West to visit (Egypt - France - India - China).
3. He went there in the 13th (century - day - year - decade).

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. When you brush your hair, it spreads the natural .... from your skin through your hair.
2. The natural oils protects your hair from heat and ....
3. The natural oils makes your hair look .... and healthy.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. They are blowing up some (streamers - balloons - invitations - fireworks) for the party.
2. (Are - Am - Is - Do) they having fun in the garden?
3. We can ask Tamer to (send - make - hang - blow) a playlist.
4. We have (a little - a few - many - much) oranges. We can't make juice for everyone.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. If we book the tour today,	a) books on the table?
2. Are there any	b) our school's Mother's Day celebration.
3. I have some perfume oil.	c) it's cheaper.
4. My friend Nadine is friendly and kind.	d) sugar?
5. I am writing to invite you to	e) Everyone loves her.
	f) It smells lovely.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

The plane is a modern invention that helps people travel anywhere in a short time. The first plane was made in 1903. It wasn't as big as the plane today. Planes are faster than cars, buses and trains, but they are also the most expensive. Some people think that traveling by plane is not safe.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The first plane was (bigger - faster - smaller - shorter) than the plane today.
2. Traveling by train is (cheaper - more expensive - faster - quieter) than traveling by plane.

B Answer these questions::

3. When was the first plane made? ▶ ....
4. What do some people think of traveling by plane? ▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. studying - for - exams - my - I'm - hard - at the moment. ▶ ....
2. English - my - school - favorite - subject - is. ▶ ....
3. tree - up - We - climb - this - can. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

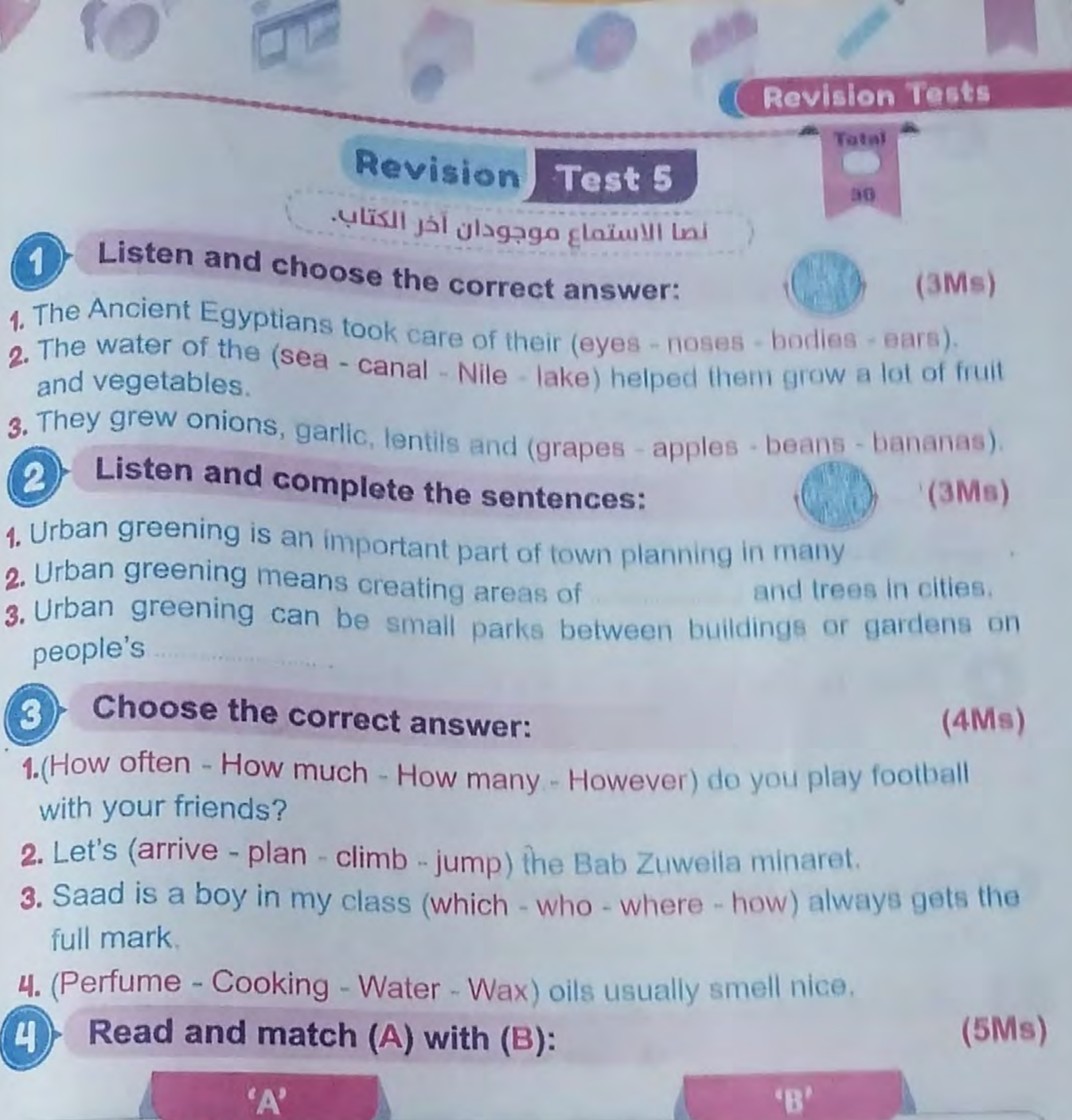
- do you like reading books ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Amr: (5Ms)

Tell him about a book you read about Marco Polo. Tell him also about the places Marco explored and some information you liked about Marco. Your email address is osama@school.net. And your friend's email address is amr@hotmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....



Revision Test 5

Total

30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. The Ancient Egyptians took care of their (eyes - noses - bodies - ears).
2. The water of the (sea - canal - Nile - lake) helped them grow a lot of fruit and vegetables.
3. They grew onions, garlic, lentils and (grapes - apples - beans - bananas).

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. Urban greening is an important part of town planning in many ....
2. Urban greening means creating areas of .... and trees in cities.
3. Urban greening can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's ....

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. (How often - How much - How many - However) do you play football with your friends?
2. Let's (arrive - plan - climb - jump) the Bab Zuweila minaret.
3. Saad is a boy in my class (which - who - where - how) always gets the full mark.
4. (Perfume - Cooking - Water - Wax) oils usually smell nice.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. Where does Salwa go on Fridays?	a) the local community.
2. How much wax do we need?	b) just next to a really cool park.
3. Our apartment is in the city center,	c) tell me all the news from home.
4. Please write back soon and	d) She's going to the cinema.
5. We are inviting people from	e) She goes to the club.
	f) 450 grams of wax.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Last Friday, my brother and I visited my uncle's farm. We went there by car. The weather was nice on that day, so we enjoyed our time there. Farmers were working hard to grow vegetables and fruit. Their sons were helping them with their work. We also enjoyed seeing the running water and the green land. The farmers welcomed us. They also helped each other.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "there" refers to the (car - farm - uncle - water).
2. The weather was (hot - cold - nice - windy) on that day.

B Answer these questions::

3. What were the farmers' sons doing? ▶ ....
4. What do farmers grow? ▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. don't – I – like – candles – making. ▶ ....
2. always – My sister – a healthy - breakfast – eats. ▶ ....
3. There – many – are – in – cars – New York. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- which area of egypt produces the most wheat ▶ ....

8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A visit to the zoo"

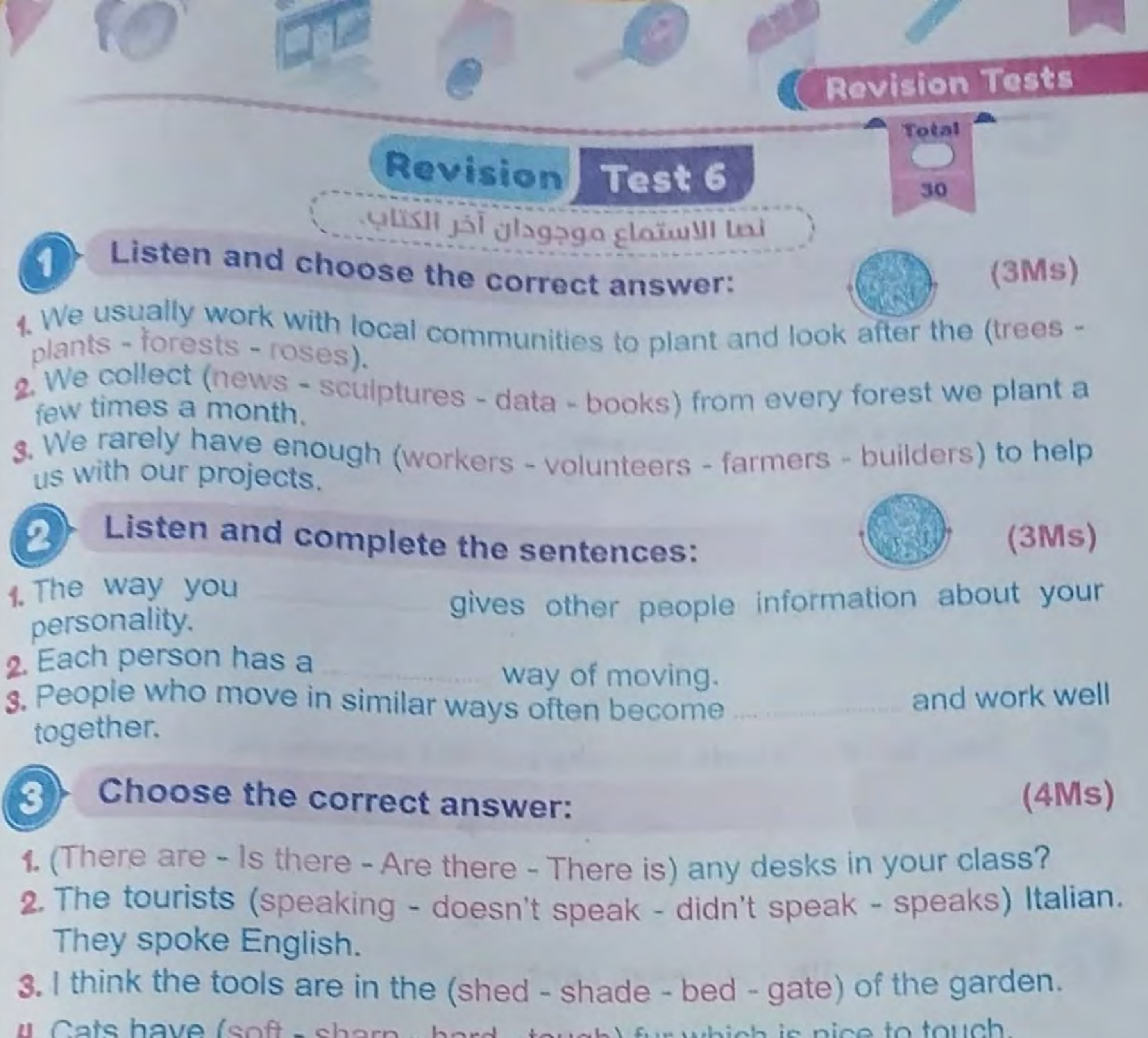
▶ **Ideas to help you:** last week - car - my family - lunch - animals - fun

....

....

....

....



Total
30

Revision Test 6

إنما الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. We usually work with local communities to plant and look after the (trees - plants - forests - roses).
2. We collect (news - sculptures - data - books) from every forest we plant a few times a month.
3. We rarely have enough (workers - volunteers - farmers - builders) to help us with our projects.

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. The way you .... gives other people information about your personality.
2. Each person has a .... way of moving.
3. People who move in similar ways often become .... and work well together.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. (There are - Is there - Are there - There is) any desks in your class?
2. The tourists (speaking - doesn't speak - didn't speak - speaks) Italian. They spoke English.
3. I think the tools are in the (shed - shade - bed - gate) of the garden.
4. Cats have (soft - sharp - hard - tough) fur which is nice to touch.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. There are	a) "the dry sea" in their language.
2. I'm excited about our vacation	b) on the River Nile!
3. I went on a felucca	c) a few apples in the basket.
4. Is he eating seafood?	d) No, she isn't.
5. Local people called the Gobi Desert	e) to Alexandria!
	f) No, he isn't.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Coffee is the most favorite drink in many countries today. Farmers grow coffee in different parts of the world. Coffee grew first in Ethiopia. People discovered it there more than 1000 years ago. After that, Arab travelers took the coffee plant to Egypt and other Arab countries. Then the people in Turkey learned about coffee. The first coffee shop in London was opened in 1652.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "it" refers to (Ethiopia - coffee - the world - farmers).
2. People discovered coffee more than one (hundred - thousand - million - century) years ago.

B Answer these questions::

3. Where did coffee grow first? ▶ ....
4. Who took coffee to Egypt? ▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. palace - a - lives - Peter - big - in. ▶ ....
2. Do - like - you - perfumes - using? ▶ ....?
3. works - dad - in - a - factory - My. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- my friend ali and i went on a trip ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Nadia: (5Ms)

Tell her about how you spend your weekend. Your email address is nadia@school.net. And your friend's email address is salma@hotmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....

Total
30

Revision Test 7

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. I'm with my (friends - cousins - family - sisters) at the carnival.
2. There are amazing rides like the (Orient Train - rollercoaster - Carnival - waterfalls).
3. There are places to (swim - eat - dance - sing) and stores, too.

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)



1. There is a .... and a playing field in our school.
2. There are also benches to .... on under the trees.
3. Children can also .... plants with Mr Mahdi.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. My birthday party was (boring - bored - excited - exciting). Everyone enjoyed it a lot.
2. My family (go - went - goes - is going) on vacation last year.
3. He wants to go out with his friends, (and - so - because - but) he has a lot of homework.
4. Can you (make - hang up - let off - blow up) some balloons?

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

'A'	'B'
1. The new green spaces	a)) of our school.
2. There's a big park near the river.	b) voyage by sea.
3. Amal wants to see	c) I'm fine.
4. Marco Polo went on a long	d) help people and animals.
5. We are proud	e) all the famous places in Aswan.
	f) I often go there.



5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

The park is the place where people sit in the shade of the trees. They enjoy seeing the beautiful flowers. Too many people go to the park on holidays. It is important to keep the park clean and tidy. But some children pick flowers and walk on grass. Some people take a lot of food with them to the park. They do not put litter in the bins. This is not good. We should keep our parks clean so we can enjoy them at any time.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "them" refers to the (people - parks - children - flowers).
2. We should put litter in the (grass - ground - park - bins).

B Answer these questions::

3. Where did people live in the past? ▶ ....
4. Was there a metro in the past? ▶ ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. the dentist – you – go to – How – do – often? ▶ ....?
2. here - to - surprised - see - you - I'm! ▶ ....!
3. in - uncle - a hospital - works – My. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

o he s going to aswan on thursday ▶ ....

8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"After-school activities"

▶ Ideas to help you: do homework - watch TV - go to the club - have dinner - go to bed

....

....

....

....





Listening Scripts



Unit 1

Listening Script 1

Test

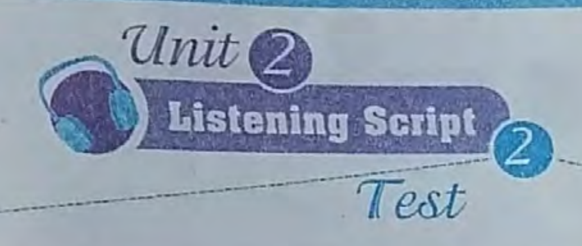
Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature, and help our wildlife like plants, animals and other living things.

Question 1

Test 1

From just one square meter of roof garden, we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great place to meet people and make friends.

Question 2



Unit 2

Listening Script 2

Test

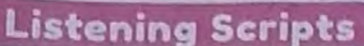
Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculate how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.

Question 1

Test 2

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the Earth is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring.

Question 2





Unit 3

Listening Script 3

Test

If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can remember better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you write down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!

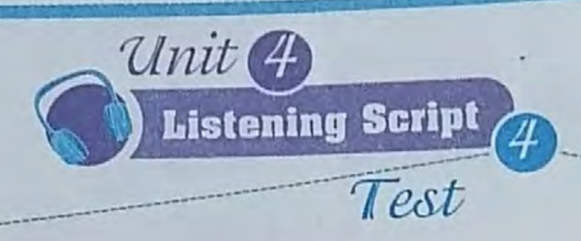
Question 1

3

Test

It is Tuesday and the girls are at Bab Zuweila. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."

Question 2



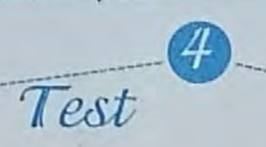
Unit 4

Listening Script 4

Test

In your last email you ask me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing Everything Ancient Egypt but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader! I'm enjoying it. I love history books - and the documentary is good, too.

Question 1



4

Test

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn.

Question 2



Unit 5 Listening Script

Test 5

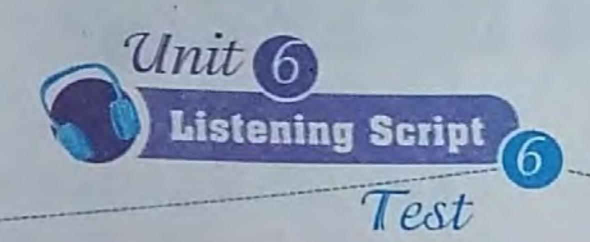
A team of archaeologists went to the area of Nok to find out more. They found many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very advanced culture from around 500 BCE to 200 CE.

Question 1

Test 5

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning, I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: he says that tomorrow the weather will be good with no wind.

Question 2



Unit 6 Listening Script

Test 6

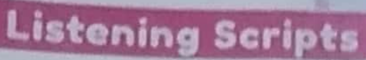
Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. A lot of the rooms are closed and mysterious.

Question 1

Test 6

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes.

Question 2



Revision 1



Listening Script 1

Test 1

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature, and help our wildlife. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests.

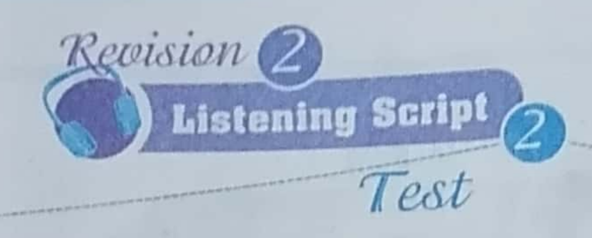
Question 1

Test 1

When you see it from the air, the Nile valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where the Nile valley opens into the Delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between desert cliffs, it is narrow.

Question 2

Revision 2



Listening Script 2

Test 2

Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive.

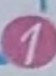
Question 1

Test 2

Hello everyone! I'm Mazen. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my free time with my nose in a book! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise too, so I go running every morning in the park. I also cycle on the weekends with my dad.

Question 2



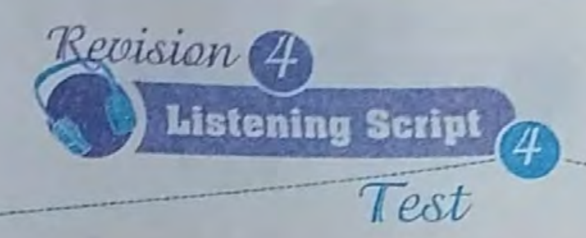


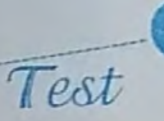
Test

Cats are the best pets. They are beautiful, with soft fur. They are clean and calm animals. They have sharp claws and teeth. When you pet a cat, it makes you happy. So they are good for your well-being, too. *Question 1*

3 Test

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, we usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too. *Question 2*

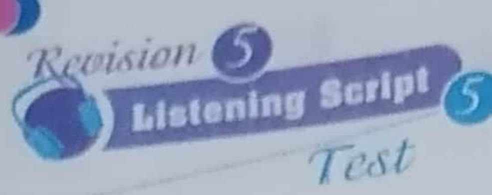




Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called The Travels of Marco Polo. *Question 1*

4 Test

When you brush your hair, it spreads the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and dirt, and makes it looks shiny and healthy. *Question 2*



Test

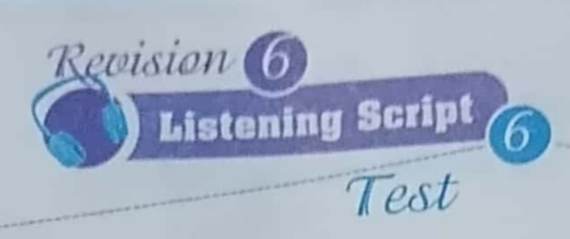
The Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and ate very well! The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. Ancient Egyptian farmers grew onions, garlic, lentils and beans.

Question 1

5 Test

'Urban greening' is an important part of town planning in many countries. It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

Question 2



Test

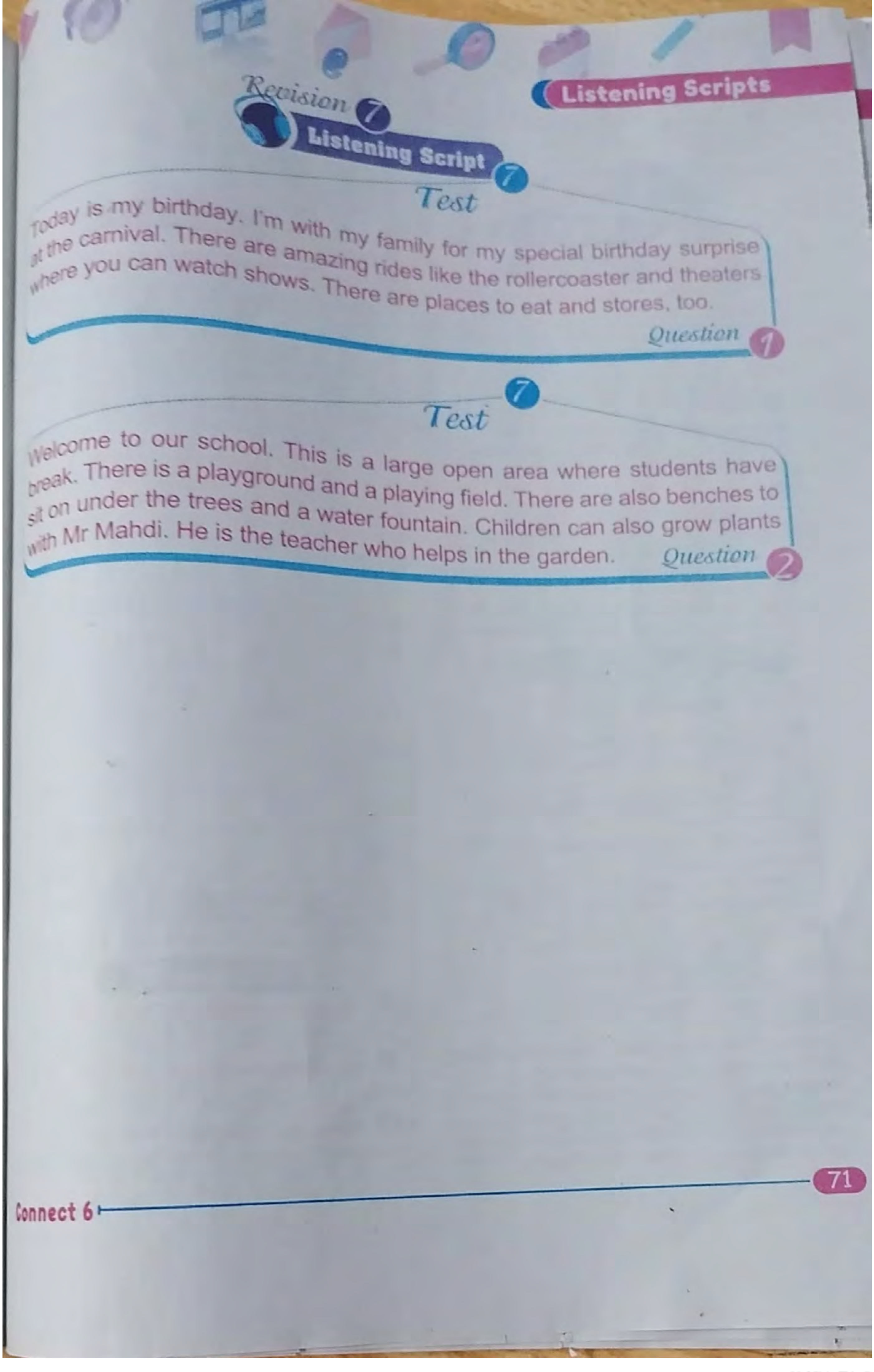
We usually work with local communities to plant and look after the forests. We collect data from every forest we plant a few times a month. We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us.

Question 1

6 Test

The way you move gives other people information about your personality. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting. People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

Question 2



Revision 7

Listening Script 7

Test 7

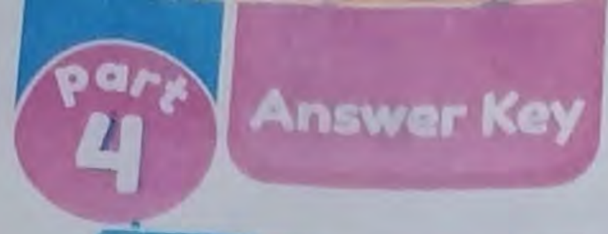
Today is my birthday. I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the carnival. There are amazing rides like the rollercoaster and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

Question 1

Test 7

Welcome to our school. This is a large open area where students have break. There is a playground and a playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

Question 2



Answer Key

Part 1 The Set Book

Unit 1

Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
- garden - roof - apartment
- neighborhood

2 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- d 2- e 3- a 4- f 5- b

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- apartment 2- volunteers 3- roof
4- plant 5- fertilizers 6- harvest
7- chemicals 8- neighborhood

4 Read and complete the text:
1) tomorrow 2) aunt 3) roof
4) grow 5) sell 6) plants
7) clean 8) friends

5 Reorder the words:
1- Where does Mariam go on Fridays?
2- I always help my aunt on Fridays.
3- We grow vegetables to eat.
4- Do you want to come to my house?
5- We sell them in the market.
6- What things do you grow?

6 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Fridays.
2- It's on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block.
3- We usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce.
4- Where does Mustafa go on Tuesdays?
5- Does your family have a garden?

7 Write an email of (50) words:
From: farida@hotmail.com
To: basma@gmail.com
Subject: Our community
Hi Basma!
I hope you're doing well. I wanted to share with you what we're doing in our community to make it cleaner and more beautiful. We, the volunteers, plant vegetables like tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce in our Mini Forest garden. It's amazing to see it grow and produce fresh food for everyone. Our neighborhood is now greener and healthier!
Lots of love
Farida

Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text:
1) organization 2) nature 3) wildlife 4) forest

2 Read the text and answer the questions:
1- forest 2- rarely
3- They work together to plant and look after the forests they plant over time.
4- They need more volunteers to join them.

3 Read and complete the dialogue:
1) cities 2) spaces 3) nature 4) volunteers

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- usually 2- often 3- How often
4- never 5- sometimes
6- rarely 7- never 8- often
9- sometimes 10- rarely
11- always 12- never 13- rarely goes
14- usually play 15- doesn't
16- How 17- know 18- play
19- don't 20- does
21- never goes 22- is never 23- eat
24- often 25- never rains 26- are always
27- often 28- usually visit
29- often takes 30- is rarely

5 Reorder the words:
1- I'm usually in bed before 10 pm.
2- My dad always eats a healthy breakfast in the morning.
3- Donia and Wael are never late for school.
4- How often do you go to the dentist?
5- Our teacher sometimes gives us homework on weekends.
6- It rarely rains in the Western Desert.

Lesson (3)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- c 2- f 3- b 4- e 5-d

2 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- c 2- e 3- b 4- a 5- d

3 Read and complete the text:
spaces – create – famous – neighborhood

4 Read and complete with "th" or "s":
seed – sick – think / throw – thirsty – sing

5 Read the text and answer the questions:
1- trees 2- beautiful
3- The giant lives in a village, in the countryside.
4- They come to play in the giant's garden.

6 Reorder the words:
1- New York has a lot of green spaces.
2- Our apartment is on the fifth floor.
3- You can walk through the gardens.
4- New York is a very noisy city.
5- There aren't many parks in New York.
6- The lovely garden makes the children happy.
7- The giant lives in a village.
8- There are tall trees in the garden.

7 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- What is Wael's favorite place in New York?
2- No, I don't want any more candy.
3- Let's have a picnic in the park north of Giza.
4- Can you give me the blue crayon, please?

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"A visit to Alexandria"
Last summer, my parents took me to Alexandria. We went to a lot of restaurants and had a lot of fun. We also went to the Alexandria library, which was really cool. I learned a lot about the history of Alexandria there. I had a really happy time in Alexandria, and I can't wait to go back someday.

Lessons (4&5)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- e 2- a 3- f 4- b 5-c

2 Read and complete the text:
1) apartment 2) floor 3) street 4) view

3 Reorder the words:
1- How are things with you?
2- Our apartment is in the city center.
3- We have a great view over the trees.
4- People use the park for meeting friends.
5- Scottish people love eating porridge.
6- I have a lot of new friends.

4 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- I'm finally in Scotland.
2- What does she miss about Egypt?
3- She lives in London, the capital of England.
4- What's your favorite subject, Nahla?
5- I eat Scottish food, but Egyptian food is better.

5 Write an email of (50) words:
From: fares@gmail.com
To: hani@yahoo.com
Subject: My new life in England
Hi Hani,
How are things? I hope you're doing well. Guess what? I'm now living in England! It's a big change from Egypt, but I'm getting used to it. There are so many new things to see and do here. I miss the weather and the Egyptian food a lot. I can't find any good koshari or ful medames here!
Anyway, I hope to hear back from you soon.
Best wishes,
Fares

Test (1) on unit (1)

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct word:
1- cities 2- nature 3- forest

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- apartment 2- view 3- park

3 Choose the correct word (s):
1- usually goes 2- often
3- is always 4- a

4 Read the text and answer the questions:
1- garden 2- volunteers
3- They usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce.
4- This year, they have lemons and dates.

5 Reorder the words:
1- We grow vegetables to eat.
2- How often do you see your friends?
3- What do you usually do at Sham El Nessim?

Answer Key

6 Punctuate the following sentence:
No, I don't want to go to the club on Monday.

7 Write an email of (50) words:
From: magdy@school.net
To: yousef@hotmail.com
Subject: The summer holiday
Dear Yousef,
Guess what? I had an amazing summer trip to a super cool village! There were so many different plants, like colorful flowers and tall sunflowers. I even saw cute farm animals like sheep and cows. But the best part was meeting the friendly people who lived there. They were so nice and told me all about their village. I had the best time ever! I can't wait to hear about your summer trips, too. see you soon!
Best wishes,
Magdy

Test (2) on unit (1)

1 Listen and choose the correct word:
1- village 2- trees 3- afternoon

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- community 2- neighborhood
3- vegetables

3 Choose the correct word (s):
1- usually goes 2- a
3- often 4- are rarely

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- c 2- f 3- d 4- a 5- b

5 Read the text and answer the questions:
1- less 2- smaller
3- It refers to the great forests of the world.
4- If these forests disappear, the climate of the world will change.

6 Reorder the words:
1- What things do you grow?
2- Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?
3- Wael's family lives in a tall building.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
Are Dina and Yasmin good at planting trees?

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"Parks"

Parks are important places for people to enjoy nature and have fun. They are filled with green trees and grass where you can walk, play sports, or fly kites. Some people like to read books or paint pictures in parks. It's important to keep parks clean. Next time you visit a park, remember to enjoy the outdoors and respect the environment!

Unit 2

Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- nervous 2- friendly 3- break 4- clever

2 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- d 2- e 3- b 4- c
5- f 6- g 7- a

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- helpful 2- funny 3- friendly 4- good
5- polite 6- messy 7- nervous 8- kind
9- clever 10- calm 11- shy 12- organized

4 Reorder the words:
1- How does Hazem feel today?
2- We are all very friendly.
3- I feel a bit nervous.
4- Do you have all your books?
5- We can share my book today.
6- You are really organized.
7- He shows respect to everyone.
8- She has long black hair.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- What does Basel offer to share with his friend?
2- School starts in September.
3- Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?
4- I don't go to school on Friday or Saturday.
5- How does Mustafa feel today?

6 Write an email of (50) words:
From: malak@gmail.com
To: aliaa@gmail.com
Subject: My first day at school
Dear Aliaa,
I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you about my first day at school. I was a bit nervous at first, but I made new friends.

Basel was really nice, and we shared books. The teachers are very kind. Miss Amira, who teaches English, is funny. Mr. Ahmed, who teaches science, has short black hair, and he is very helpful.
I can't wait to hear about your first day at school too!
Lots of love,
Malak

Lesson (2)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- c 2- g 3- a 4- f 5- e 6- b 7- d

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- school 2- study
3- equipment 4- open area

3 Read and complete the text:
1- area 2- break 3- benches 4- fountain

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- who 2- which 3- where
4- which 5- where 6- who
7- which 8- which 9- where
10- where 11- who 12- which

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- surprised 2- surprising 3- bored
4- bored 5- exciting 6- excited
7- interested 8- interesting 9- tired
10- tiring

6 Reorder the words:
1- We are proud of our modern buildings.
2- This is a large open area.
3- Where do you study Arabic?
4- I'm surprised to see you!
5- She is interested in science.
6- He loves using laptops all the time.
7- English is my favorite school subject.
8- Who is your math teacher?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- Kareem is a clever boy.
2- Do you like your school, Amgad?
3- Who is your math teacher?
4- My parents take me to the park every Friday.
5- When does Manal wake up for school?

Lesson (3)

1 Read and write in the correct column:

Answer Key

/æ/ sound: track - hat - mat - bag - angry - animal - happy
/ / sound: cut - truck - hungry - brush - duck - nuts - funny

2 Round the numbers:
1) 2 2) 13 3) 1 4) 5 5) 25
6) 19 7) 8 8) 42 9) 32 10) 87

3 Read the text and answer the questions:
1- 22 2- a little
3- The students need 2 cans of paint to paint the walls. 4- They will have at least 20 liters of paint left over.

4 Reorder the words:
1- The weather is sunny today.
2- Something is moving inside the house.
3- Who is inside the house?
4- Hare runs to the forest.
5- There's an animal in my house.
6- Elephants are afraid of mice!
7- Hare hears a noise inside her house.

5 Write a text of (50) words:
"An interesting story I read"
I read an interesting story about a brave young girl and her brave adventures. I read it last week before bedtime. The main characters are Lily and a talking dragon named Spark. I liked Spark the most because he helped Lily solve problems. The story was full of excitement and surprises!

Lessons (4&5)

1 Read and complete the text:
1- pets 2- soft 3- friendly 4- walk

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- pets 2- soft 3- independent
4- sharp 5- pet

3 Reorder the words:
1- Cats are my favorite animals.
2- Fish are the best pets.
3- Soft fur is nice to touch.
4- I love to keep my pet clean.
5- Cats have sharp claws and teeth.
6- Hany writes about his favorite pet.
7- Dogs are very friendly pets.
8- Why do people love to keep pets?
9- We want to go to the beach.
10- Dalia is clever and polite.

4 **Punctuate the following sentences:**

1- This is Arwa's lovely pet.
2- No, we don't need to go to the school on Saturday.
3- Mohamed Salah is a famous footballer.
4- What's your favorite animal?
5- Those aren't my shoes.

5 **Write a text of (50) words:**

"My favorite pet"

My favorite pet is a cat. It eats cat food and sometimes fish. It sleeps on a nice bed in my room. I pet it softly and play with it using toys. The good things about having a pet are the company and fun it brings, but I need to clean up after it. In total, I love my cat because it brings joy to my life.

Test (3) on unit (2)

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

1- where 2- benches 3- plants

2 **Read and complete the dialogue:**

1- interesting 2- afraid 3- brave

3 **Choose the correct answer:**

1- where 2- surprising 3- who 4- but

4 **Read the text and answer the questions:**

1- soft 2- fur
3- Because they are beautiful with soft fur, and they are clean, calm and friendly animals.
4- Cats use their sharp claws and teeth when they are scared.

5 **Reorder the words:**

1- How does Hazem feel today?
2- Which school subjects do you like?
3- My new school is great.

6 **Punctuate the following sentence:**

Yes, we are going to the zoo on Thursday.

7 **Write an email of (50) words:**

"My school"

My school is big and has many classrooms, laboratories, and a gymnasium. I go to school every morning. I'm never late for school. I like going to school because I meet my friends and play in the open area and playing fields. I also love my teachers. They are very kind and helpful. It's a fun place to learn and have a great time!

Test (4) on unit (2)

1 **Listen and choose the correct word:**

1- computer 2- Technology 3- 50

2 **Listen and complete the sentences:**

1- science 2- laboratories 3- experiments

3 **Choose the correct answer:**

1- who 2- where 3- interested 4- which

4 **Read and match (A) with (B):**

1- f 2- e 3- b 4- a 5- c

5 **Read the text and answer the questions:**

1- Three 2- famous
3- It refers to fish.
4- You should love and care for it, and you have to feed it.

6 **Reorder the words:**

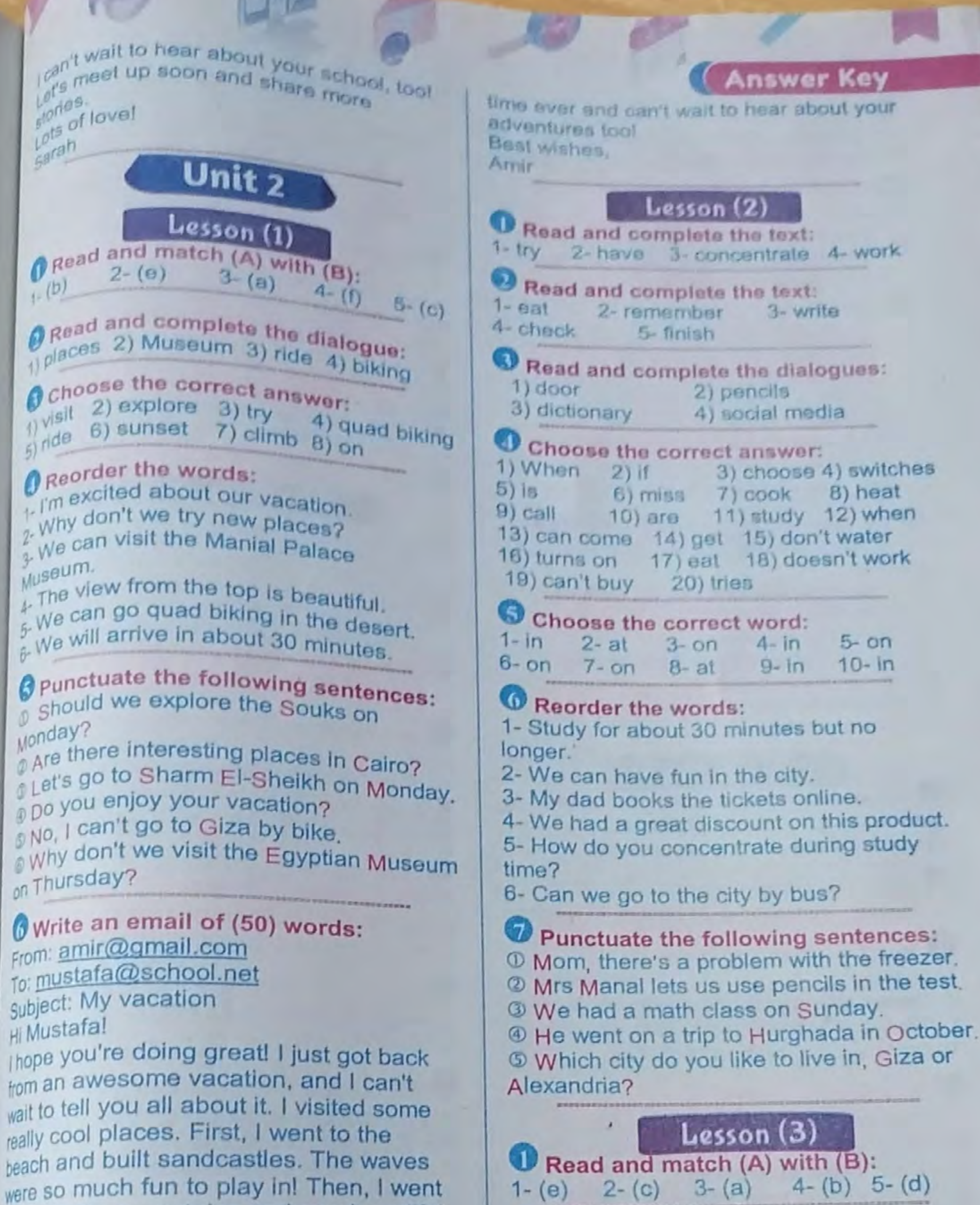
1- These are the shoes which I wear to school.
2- What does Amr like?
3- Children can grow plants with Mr. Mahdi.

7 **Punctuate the following sentence:**

What's the weather like in Egypt in January?

8 **Write an email of (50) words:**

From: sarah@gmail.com
To: hagar@gmail.com
Subject: My school
Hi Hagar!
I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you about my school and the classrooms we have. We have different rooms for different subjects like math, science, and English. In the science lab, we do fun experiments, and in the art room, we paint and draw.
Outside, we have a big playground with swings and slides. During break, I usually play football with my friends. It's so much fun! We also have an open area with beautiful flowers and benches where we sit and chat.



I can't wait to hear about your school, too! Let's meet up soon and share more stories.
Lots of love!
Sarah

Unit 2

Lesson (1)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (b) 2- (e) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (c)

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1) places 2) Museum 3) ride 4) biking

3 Choose the correct answer:
1) visit 2) explore 3) try 4) quad biking
5) ride 6) sunset 7) climb 8) on

4 Reorder the words:
1- I'm excited about our vacation.
2- Why don't we try new places?
3- We can visit the Manial Palace Museum.
4- The view from the top is beautiful.
5- We can go quad biking in the desert.
6- We will arrive in about 30 minutes.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:
① Should we explore the Souks on Monday?
② Are there interesting places in Cairo?
③ Let's go to Sharm El-Sheikh on Monday.
④ Do you enjoy your vacation?
⑤ No, I can't go to Giza by bike.
⑥ Why don't we visit the Egyptian Museum on Thursday?

6 Write an email of (50) words:
From: amir@gmail.com
To: mustafa@school.net
Subject: My vacation
Hi Mustafa!
I hope you're doing great! I just got back from an awesome vacation, and I can't wait to tell you all about it. I visited some really cool places. First, I went to the beach and built sandcastles. The waves were so much fun to play in! Then, I went hiking in the mountains and saw beautiful waterfalls. It was like a magical forest! I also went to the zoo and saw lions, monkeys and elephants. I had the best time ever and can't wait to hear about your adventures too!
Best wishes,
Amir

Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text:
1- try 2- have 3- concentrate 4- work

2 Read and complete the text:
1- eat 2- remember 3- write
4- check 5- finish

3 Read and complete the dialogues:
1) door 2) pencils
3) dictionary 4) social media

4 Choose the correct answer:
1) When 2) if 3) choose 4) switches
5) is 6) miss 7) cook 8) heat
9) call 10) are 11) study 12) when
13) can come 14) get 15) don't water
16) turns on 17) eat 18) doesn't work
19) can't buy 20) tries

5 Choose the correct word:
1- in 2- at 3- on 4- in 5- on
6- on 7- on 8- at 9- in 10- in

6 Reorder the words:
1- Study for about 30 minutes but no longer.
2- We can have fun in the city.
3- My dad books the tickets online.
4- We had a great discount on this product.
5- How do you concentrate during study time?
6- Can we go to the city by bus?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:
① Mom, there's a problem with the freezer.
② Mrs Manal lets us use pencils in the test.
③ We had a math class on Sunday.
④ He went on a trip to Hurghada in October.
⑤ Which city do you like to live in, Giza or Alexandria?

Lesson (3)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (c) 3- (a) 4- (b) 5- (d)

2 Read and complete the text:
1) cousin 2) Aswan 3) famous 4) Dome

3 Write in the correct column:
/v/ (volcano – violin – vegetables – vet – veil)
/w/ (water – wolf – window – west – worm)

4 Read the text and answer:
1- afraid 2- fantastic
3- They see the view of the city.
4- Amal helped Fatima to feel calmer. She took her hand and smiles.

5 Reorder the words:
1- I want to see all the famous places.
2- Amal shows Fatima a photo.
3- Little Deer runs through the forest.
4- There's a great view from there!
5- He doesn't know what to say.
6- She wants to make everyone happy.
7- I don't want to disappoint you.
8- Bear has a drink from the river.

6 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her
2- What's the weather like on Sunday?
3- How much does it cost?
4- I don't like reading.
5- Yes, give me some water, please.
6- He's a clever boy
7- No, she isn't good at painting.
1- It is Amal's first time in Aswan.

Lessons (4&5)

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1) birthday 2) fantasy
3) rollercoaster 4) present

2 Read and complete the text:
1) theater 2) screens 3) effects 4) realistic

3 Read the text and answer:
1- brave 2- interesting
3- Tamer is at the Carnival with his family.
4- They are at the Carnival because it is Tamer's special birthday surprise.

4 Reorder the words:
1- I'm at the Carnival with my family.
2- There are a lot of shows and concerts.
3- I don't like rollercoasters.
4- Did you enjoy your time with Talia?
5- We have tickets for the waterfalls.
6- I want to go to the simulation theater.

5 Punctuate:
1- I love my special birthday surprise at the Carnival.
2- No, you can't eat my burgers.
3- Is Mohamed Salah a good footballer?
4- Who's your favorite singer?
5- I enjoy my time with my family a lot

6 Write a text of (50) words:
"A day at the Carnival"
I had the best day at the carnival! First, we started with the most exciting rollercoaster ever! It made us scream and laugh with joy, and I loved it! Then we hopped on the Orient Train and saw cool things. After that, we went to a simulation theater, and it felt like I was inside a movie! We even got to see magical waterfalls. I had so much fun playing games, too!

Test (5) on unit (3)

1 Listen and choose:
1- first 2- climb up 3- view

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- vacation 2- Dome 3- view

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- goes 2- at 3- help 4- on

4 Read the text and answer:
1- 26 2- home
3- "They" refers to Ahmed and Eman.
4- Eman likes playing computer games in her free time. She also likes watching TV.

5 Reorder the words:
1- She is afraid of heights.
2- Wolf has a drink from the lake.
3- What are your tips for studying?

6 Punctuate the following sentence:
Should Tamer go quad biking on Wednesday?

7 Write an email of (50) words:
From: menna@yahoo.com
To: shaza@hotmail.com
Subject: Getting ready for midterm tests
Hi Shaza,
I hope you're doing well! I wanted to tell you how I study for midterm tests. I make a timetable for each subject, take breaks between sessions, and ask for help when

needed. I'm good at English and math, but I'm not good at Arabic or science. Let's support each other!
Best wishes,
Menna

Test (6) on unit (3)

1 Listen and choose:
1- Carnival 2- rollercoaster 3-theaters

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- birthday 2- Carnival 3- rollercoaster

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- on 2- can't 3- goes 4- on

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- smallest 2- expensive
3- Fady wrote this email
4- The restaurants in Sharm El-Sheikh have fantastic and delicious food, but it isn't cheap.

6 Reorder the words:
1- When do you get up on school days?
2- Let's go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster! 3- Suddenly, she doesn't feel scared anymore.

7 Punctuate:
Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her in Aswan.

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"A visit to Cairo Tower"
Last weekend, I went to Cairo Tower with my family. We had so much fun! We ate yummy Egyptian food at the tower's restaurant. From the top, we saw the beautiful city and famous places like the River Nile and the Pyramids. It was an amazing experience! I had so much fun.

Unit 4

Lesson (1)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (f) 3- (b) 4- (e) 5- (a)

2 Choose the correct answer:
1) fireworks 2) playlist 3) send
4) string 5) decorating 6) hanging
7) blow up 8) make

3 Read and complete the dialogue:
hanging – string – balloons – birthday

4 Reorder the words:
1- Will you come to my birthday party?
2- I don't like the chocolate cakes.
3- My mom decorates all the cakes.
4- My brother is blowing up the balloons.
5- Did you let off the fireworks?
6- Let's play some nice music.
7- Are you sending the invitations?
8- Dalida made a playlist for my party.
9- We need an adult to let off the fireworks.
10- I love all my friends.

5 Punctuate:
① What are Nesma's sisters doing?
② They don't like carnivals.
③ Let's go to Sharm El-Sheikh on Monday.
④ Do you enjoy your vacation?
⑤ No, I can't do this right now.
⑥ Dalida and Noha are decorating the birthday cake.

6 Write an email of (50) words:
From: mona@gmail.com
To: radwa@yahoo.com
Subject : My birthday party
Dear Radwa,
I hope you're doing well! I want to invite you to my birthday party. It's going to be so much fun! I will hang up streamers and balloons, and my older brother will let off the fireworks. The party will be at my house on Saturday at 7 pm. I'll send you more details soon. I can't wait to celebrate with you!
Lots of love,
Mona

Lesson (2)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (f) 2- (a) 3- (e) 4- (b) 5- (d)

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- are 2- is not 3- are not 4- They 5- is
6- is 7- aren't 8- studying 9- Are / I am
10- doing 11- helping 12- is working
13- is 14- going up 15- are 16- practicin
17- am not 18- are 19- are playing 20- ar
21- are eating 22- trying 23- are having fur
24- Is 25- are cycling

3 Reorder the words:

1) We are buying the decorations today.
2) Are they playing a game?
3) I'm wearing a new hat.
4) Ahmed is eating some cakes.
5) My sisters are cooking some food.
6) Is your dad taking photos?
7) Laila and Mona are helping their mom.

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- Muhammad isn't playing basketball.
2- He's wearing a wonderful suit.
3- We aren't enjoying our vacation.
4- No, I am not happy.
5- Is Aliaa eating her sandwich?

5 Write a text of (50) words:

"What are I and my family doing these days?"

My family and I are doing a lot of things these days. We read books together, play games, and watch movies. We also help each other with housework around the house, like cooking and washing dishes. My mom works from home, so she is always around to help us with our homework. My dad works at the office, but he comes home early most days to spend time with us. We are all really close, and we love spending time together.

Lesson (3)

1 Read and complete:

1) celebrated 2) candles 3) parties 4) present

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (a) 2- (c) 3- (b) 4- (e) 5- (d)

3 Write the words in the correct column:

/e/ (bed– head– shed– bread– pen)
/ei/ (cake– train– say– pay– wait)

4 Choose the correct answer:

1) main 2) shed 3) sail 4) met 5) pain

5 Read the text and answer:

1- blow out 2- candles
3- Children everywhere like party food.
4- They give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family: their mom and dad!

6 Reorder the words:

1- People often give other people birthday cards.
2- Who do we usually invite to birthday parties?
3- Children everywhere like party food.
4- Which birthday tradition is the most interesting?
5- Some countries have different birthday food.
6- How do you celebrate birthdays in your family?
7- Children like to blow out the candles.

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. What do we do in Egypt?
2. In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give presents on birthdays.
3. Who gets the first piece of birthday cake in India?
4. How old are Chinese children when they are born?

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: nada@school.net
To: jane@hotmail.com
Subject: Birthday traditions in Egypt
Hi Jane,
In Egypt, we celebrate birthdays with cakes, candles, and music. We sing special songs, and the birthday boy or girl blows out candles on a cake, one for each year of their life. We have a lot of fun at birthday parties! We play games, eat food, and make lots of noise. It's a great time to celebrate with friends and family. I hope you have a happy birthday soon!
Lots of love,
Nada

Lessons (4&5)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (b) 4- (a)

2 Reorder the words:

1- I invite you to my school's Mother's Day celebration.
2- We are organizing a special day.
3- We are inviting people from the local community.
4- Did you enjoy your time with your friends?
5- We have tickets for the party.
6- I want to go to the zoo.

3 Read the text and answer:

1- invite 2- Sunday
3- The invitation is addressed to Mr Ahmed Hegazy.
4- Randa asks to receive Mr Ahmed's reply by February 20.

Answer Key

❶ Punctuate:
1- We very much hope you can attend.
2- No, you can't share these documents with anyone.
3- Marcel Koller is a successful coach.
4- Who's your favorite actor?
5- I enjoy my time with my friends a lot.

❷ Write a formal invitation of 50 words:
(يكتب الطلاب رسالة بريد إلكتروني مشابهة للرسالة الموجودة في الدرس مع تعديل بعض التفاصيل فيها)

Test (7) on unit (4)

❶ Listen and choose:
1- cakes 2- present 3- family

❷ Read and complete the dialogue:
invitations – playlist – fireworks

❸ Choose the correct answer:
1- wearing 2- Are
3- balloons 4- are playing

❹ Read the text and answer:
1- Alexandria 2- cool
3- He swims, builds sandcastles and plays beach volleyball too.
4- He likes to explore the city. He often goes to parks, stores, restaurants or cafes.

❺ Reorder the words:
1- We're drinking orange juice on the beach.
2- Birthday celebrations are not the same everywhere.
3- Do you have the term exams?

❻ Punctuate the following sentence:
I helped Nada decorate the birthday cake.

❼ Write a text of (50) words:
"How do I spend My free time?"
I spend my free time in a few ways. I like to read books, play football with my friends, go shopping with my mom, and watch TV. I also like to go to the park and play on the swings. Sometimes I just like to relax and watch TV.

Test (8) on unit (4)

❶ Listen and choose:
1- blow out 2- India 3- breath

❷ Listen and complete:
1- exams 2- park 3- party

❸ Choose the correct answer:
1- aren't enjoying 2- organizing
3- going 4- writing

❹ Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (c) 2- (a) 3- (f) 4- (b) 5- (d)

❺ Read the text and answer:
1- eighteen 2- summer
3- The underlined word "They" refers to Sally's friends. 4- Sally's mother has prepared special things to eat and drink.

❻ Reorder the words:
1- We hope you live for many years.
2- I am working on a new project.
3- We are organizing for the event on Friday.

❼ Punctuate the following sentence:
Do people in Egypt play games at birthday parties?

❽ Write an email of (50) words:
From: Jana101@ yahoo.com
To: Jasmine@gmail.com
Subject : My school's annual celebration!
Dear Jasmine,
My school is having an annual celebration on Saturday, September 10th, in the sports hall at 7 pm. There will be music, food, and games. I want you to come! Please respond to my email address by August 30th so that I know how many people to expect.
I hope you can make it!
Lots of love,
Jana

Unit 5

Lesson (1)

❶ Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (f) 2- (a) 3- (e) 4- (b) 5- (d)

❷ Read and complete:
reading – vacation – museum – island

❸ Read the text and answer:
1- explorer 2- camel
3- He went there in the 13th century.
4- It's called "The Travels of Marco Polo".

❹ Reorder the words:
1- I went to Dahab with my grandparents.

2- I go to Hurghada with my family.
3- Where was your last trip?
4- Marco Polo is an Italian explorer.
5- My dad wrote a diary about his experiences.
6- Marco Polo sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula.
7- We didn't enjoy the last vacation.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

① The museum had a lot of objects from Ancient China.
② What's your favorite thing about the vacation?
③ We don't have any drinks here.
④ How did people get to India in those days?
⑤ No, I can't read it.

6 Write a text of (50) words:

"How I spent my last vacation"

I went to the beach with my grandparents last summer. We stayed in a small hotel right on the water. Every morning, we woke up early and went for a swim. The water was so warm and clear! We built sandcastles and played in the water. We had so much fun together, and I can't wait to go back to the beach next summer.

Lesson (2)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (d) 2- (f) 3- (a) 4- (b)
5- (c) 6- (e) 7- (g)

2 Read and complete the text:

1- Nigeria 2- archaeologists 3- culture 4- clay

3 Read and complete the dialogue:

was – went – go – found - weren't – had

4 Choose the correct answer:

1) was 2) was 3) weren't 4) were 5) was
6) wasn't 7) Were / was 8) Were / weren't
9) was 10) Was / wasn't

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- lived 2- tidied 3- brought
4- blew 5- didn't speak 6- enjoyed
7- Did / didn't 8- watched 9- didn't
10- stopped 11- swim / did 12- bought
13- get up 14- Did 15- play
16- came 17- go 18- didn't finish
19- help 20- sleep 21- Did 22- Were

6 Reorder the words:

1- The sculptures were all in the same style.
2- Archeologists found a lot of metal sculptures.
3- Nok's culture is still a mystery today.
4- We can learn about cultures from their art.
5- There was a surprising discovery in Nigeria.
6- Who discovered these great objects?
7- I'm not interested in the Nok civilization.
8- My sister didn't like the sculptures.
9- The Nok culture was advanced.
10- There isn't written information about the Nok.

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- There was a discovery in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa.
2- Can you help me, please?
3- Yes, she did.
4- We didn't enjoy our vacation.
5- When did Hatem have his lunch?
6- My parents weren't at the party yesterday.

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: fayez@yahoo.com
To: haitham@gmail.com
Subject : Last week activities
Dear Haitham,
How are you? And how is your family? I'm writing to tell you about my family's trip to the zoo last week. We had a great time! We saw all sorts of animals, including lions, tigers, bears, elephants, and monkeys. We even fed the giraffes! We also learned a lot about the animals. It was a really fun experience. I hope you !had a great week too
See you soon,
Fayez

Lesson (3)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (c) 2- (e) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (d) 6- (b)

2 Read and complete the text:

1) dromedaries 2) caravan 3) desert 4) water

3 Write the words in the correct column:

/ʤ/ (huge – fridge – dangerous – joke – age)
/ʒ/ (treasure – television – Asia – usually – measure)

4 Read the text and answer:

1- amazed 2- twenty
3- He was twenty-one.
4- The local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

5 Reorder the words:

1- Marco Polo was a great traveler.
2- Marco Polo was fascinated by the sand dunes.
3- It is a mysterious and dangerous place.
4- What were the dromedaries like?
5- The ship didn't leave the port.
6- I was sad and down all day yesterday.
7- I had breakfast with my friends.
8- I can explore the mysterious island!

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- Which Egyptian animal does that animal look like?
2- I visit my grandparents every Friday.
3- Yes, she played football yesterday.
4- Ahmed Zaki was a famous actor.
5- We love to read about Marco Polo.
6- My father didn't let me go out.

Lessons (4&5)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (e) 4- (a) 5- (b)

2 Read the text and answer:

1- wood 2- easy
3- A tall, serious man called Kareem
4- They were awesome! They were huge and the stones were a sort of golden color.

3 Reorder the words:

1- I went on a felucca on the River Nile!
2- A felucca isn't made of metal.
3- Karim was the captain of the boat.
4- A felucca is difficult to sail.
5- The boat had two white sails.
6- We had lunch on board the felucca.
7- I had such a wonderful experience!
8- Did you enjoy the trip?

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- I saw the Pyramids of Giza.
2- No, he didn't come with us.
3- Noha, Amira and Rania's birthdays are in December.
4- What do you want to eat?
5- Welcome to Egypt.

5 Write an email of (50) words:

From: Sara@gmail.com
To : Ramy@gmail.com
Subject : A day with my Family
Dear Ramy,
How are you doing? I hope you're doing great!
I visited a museum last week with my family. I learned a lot about history. I even got to see a real dinosaur skeleton! It was a really interesting day, and I'm glad I got to learn about all of those different things. I can't wait to go back to the museum again soon.
Write back soon,
Sara

Test (9) on unit (5)

1 Listen and choose:

1- wood 2- traditional 3- River Nile

2 Read and complete:

explorer – century – voyage – camel

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- went 2- discovery 3- wasn't 4- felucca

4 Read the text and answer:

1- bus 2- late
3- The trip took 13 hours. They left in the morning at 9 am and came back home at 10 pm.
4- They saw different animals in the zoo.

5 Reorder the words:

1- The travelers found treasure last year.
2- What types of animals can you see?
3- Local people found some objects.

6 Punctuate the following sentence:

No, I don't want to go to the club on Monday.

7 Write an email of (50) words:

From: ali@yahoo.com
To : jack@hotmail.com
Subject : Great discoveries
Dear Jack,
Did you know that archaeologists have found amazing things in Egypt? Like the tomb of Tutankhamun, which was filled with treasures! They've also found the Valley of the Kings, where many pharaohs were buried. These discoveries help us

learn more about Ancient Egypt. Tell me more about your country's discoveries.
Write back soon,
Ali

Test (10) on unit (5)

1 Listen and choose:
1- Marco Polo 2- China 3- diary

2 Listen and complete:
1- objects 2- humans 3- sculptures

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- archaeologists 2- studied
3- caravan 4- come

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (f) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (e) 5- (c)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- trains 2- studies
3- It is traveling by air.
4- In the past, people travelled on foot or horseback.

6 Reorder the words:
1- The museum had a lot of ancient objects from China.
2- Can you help me, please?
3- The scientists had an amazing experience.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
Are Dina and Yasmin good at planting trees?

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"Deserts"
Deserts are places where it doesn't rain much. There is little water. The weather is very hot during the day and very cold at night. The sand dunes are big and can be hard to walk on. Animals that live in deserts have special ways to stay cool and find water. People who live in deserts also have to be very careful to stay safe.

Unit 6

Lesson (1)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (f) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (e) 5- (c)

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
nstructions – wax – palm trees – grams

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- candles 2- Perfume 3- drops 4- wax
5-Palm 6- wick 7- sticks 8- soap

4 Reorder the words:
1- Perfume oils smell lovely.
2- I have two bottles of lemon oil.
3- We need one glass for each candle.
4- Heat the wax to melt it.
5- I don't like making candles.
6- What do we need to make candles?

5 Punctuate the following sentences:
① What do Leila and her mom make?
② Ahmed is such a clever student.
③ Do you like pizza?
④ No, my mom can't drive cars.
⑤ It's very cold in January.
⑥ Yes, but you don't need wax.

Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text:
1) Nile 2) depended 3) floods

2 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (a) 4- (b)

3 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (c) 2- (d) 3- (b) 4- (a)

4 Read and complete the dialogues:
1- How much 2- How many
3- How many 4- How many 5- How much

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- How many 2- a few
3- How much / A little 4- How many
5- a lot of 6- a little 7- How many
8- a lot of 9- How much 10- How much
11- a few 12- a little 13- a few
14- How many 15- How much 16- a few
17- a lot of 18- a little 19- any / some
20- a lot of 21- How many 22- any / some
23- How many 24- some 25- any
26- any 27- There are 28- There is
29- There is 30- There are 31- How much
32- How many 33- rice 34- potatoes
35- butter 36- carrots 37- is
38- are 39- Is 40- Are

6 Reorder the words:
1- Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies.

2- What did the Ancient Egyptians eat?
3- Most people in Ancient Egypt ate a little meat.
4- There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt.
5- How many bottles of milk are there?
6- They knew how to preserve food.
7- How much oil do we need?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- My cousin doesn't like ice cream.
2- How many cups of coffee does Ramy drink?
3- The water of the Nile always helped the Ancient Egyptians.
4- How much money do we need, Adel?
5- Yes, Samira plays tennis every Thursday.

7 Write an email of (50) words:

From: rana@hotmail.com
To: noha@gmail.com
Subject : Helping my mom
Dear Noha,
I'm writing to tell you about a meal I helped my mom make last night. It was chicken, and it was delicious!
We started by chopping up some chicken, carrots, onions, and peppers. Then we heated up some oil in a pan and cooked the chicken until it was browned. We added the vegetables and cooked them for a few minutes, then we added some soy sauce and mixed everything together.
I'm so glad I got to help my mom make it. Write back soon and tell me all about the meal you prepared.
Lots of love,
Rana

Lesson (3) Part (1)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (b) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (c)

2 Reorder the words:

1- What is the king doing?
2- Peter lives in a big palace.
3- Where does Peter live?
4- The king wasn't happy.
5- Why did the king leave the painting?
6- I didn't like the dining room.
7- He can see crowns and scepters.
8- Where does Peter find the king?

Answer Key

3 Punctuate the following sentences:

① Does Peter notice something strange?
② Yes, we can go through these rooms.
③ Summer is my favorite season.
④ Did you see the Moroccan king?
⑤ Ancient Egyptians were so clever.
⑥ Do you like eating cookies?

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"A king I have read about"

I read about a king named King Tutankhamun. He ruled in Ancient Egypt a really long time ago. He became king when he was just a young boy! I know that he had a golden mask and lots of treasures in his tomb. I think it's amazing that they discovered his tomb after many years. I like that he was a pharaoh and had a cool golden mask. Ancient Egyptian stories are really interesting.

Lesson (3) Part (2)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- d 2- c 3- e 4- a 5- f

2 Read and complete the text:

1) teeth 2) stick 3) toothpaste 4) powder

2 Read and complete the text:

1) mint 2) seeds 3) mixture 4) cool

4 Reorder the words:

1- Kapet was an expensive perfume in Ancient Egypt.
2- Cheaper perfumes had a lot of spices in them.
3- Do you like using perfumes?
4- The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes.
5- The Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.

5 Write a text of (50) words:
"My personal care tools"

I take care of my body by washing my hands with soap and water, brushing my teeth with toothpaste and a toothbrush twice a day, and combing my hair with a hairbrush. I use shampoo to wash my hair. I put on perfume and deodorant to keep me smelling fresh.

Answer Key

Lessons (4&5)

1 Read and complete the text:

1) spices 2) restaurants
3) combinations 4) recipes

2 Read and complete the text:

1) perfume 2) cloth
3) souvenirs 4) tourists

3 Reorder the words:

1- He doesn't want to make salt dough.
2- What would you make with salt dough?
3- We are having fun together.
4- What do we use for spices?
5- Egypt is famous for its spices.
6- We can use spices to make perfume.
7- What colors are they?

4 Read the text and answer:

1- dirty 2- four
3- They washed in the Nile River, or in public bathhouses.
4- They used essential oils and flower oils.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- What's Egypt famous for?
2- He's working on Fridays.
3- No, you're not coming with me.
4- Adel, Hazem, Qasem and Mustafa are my best friends.
5- Does Sama like all her school subjects?
6- Basim and Karim are playing in the garden.

Test (11) on unit (6)

1 Listen and choose:

1- perfumes 2- Kapet 3- expensive

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- hairbrush 2- toothbrush 3- soap

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- wax 2- palace 3- many 4- any

4 Read the text and answer:

1- patients 2- bread
3- She helps doctors and looks after sick people.
4- Because she always smiles at them and she loves them.

5 Reorder the words:

1- How many lemons do we need?
2- Sama likes a lot of milk in her tea.
3- Peter lives in a big palace with his parents.

6 Punctuate the following sentence:

Farmers grow lots of different spices in Egypt.

7 Write a text of (50) words:

"Egyptian flavors"

Egyptian spices are famous all over the world. They are used in many different recipes. We don't only use spices to cook food. We also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks. Fresh spices are one of the favorite souvenirs that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

Test (12) on unit (6)

1 Listen and choose:

1- a little 2- honey 3- drinks

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

1- spices 2- cloth 3- souvenirs

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- a lot of 2- mint 3- spices 4- much

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (e) 4- (f) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:

1- tidy 2- interesting
3- Students have to follow their school rules.
4- School teaches students how to be good people.

6 Reorder the words:

1- Stir the chocolate pieces into the mixture.
2- There is a little shampoo.
3- How much oil do we need?

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

I enjoy this drink in Egypt and Morocco.

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: ramy@yahoo.com
To: bell@school.net
Subject: The famous drinks from my country!
Hi Bell,
How are you? I wanted to share some famous drinks from my country, Egypt. One famous drink is called "Lemonade". We

...ake it by squeezing fresh lemons, adding water, and some sugar. It's perfect for hot summer days or when we have picnics. Tell me about the famous drinks you have in England. I can't wait to hear from you!
Lots of love,
Ramy

Part 2 Final Revision

Revision on Unit 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1) shopping 2) theater 3) usually 4) stay

2 Read and complete the text:
1) local 2) species 3) performance 4) hang

3 Read and complete the text:
1) builds 2) play 3) silent 4) brown

4 Read and complete the text:
1) apartment 2) view 3) friends 4) Castle

5 Read and complete the text:
1) noisy 2) restaurants 3) delicious 4) miss

6 Read and complete the dialogue:
1) spend 2) kids 3) countryside 4) Nile

7 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (d) 3- (c) 4- (f) 5- (b)

8 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (e) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (b)

9 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (f) 3- (e) 4- (a) 5- (c)

10 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (a) 3- (f) 4- (b) 5- (d)

11 Reorder the words:
1- My grandpa rarely visits us.
2- Ahmed is always good to his friends.
3- Akram sometimes goes swimming.
4- How often do you go to club?
5- The giant builds a wall around his garden.
6- She visits her grandma twice a week.
7- You can hang out with your friends.
8- We always plant trees.
9- The High Line was a railway line.
10- Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

Answer Key

11- The people here are nice.
12- How are things in Alexandria?
13- I often go there with my parents.
14- You can walk through the gardens.
15- New York is very noisy all the time.
16- Tell me all the news from home.
17- We sometimes go to the movie theater.
18- I usually spend time with my sisters.
19- They live on a farm in the countryside.
20- What do you like about your neighborhood?

12 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- New York has a lot of green spaces.
2- I miss Egyptian food so much.
3- Your new dress sounds great, Mariam.
4- How are things in Alexandria?
5- There are lots of restaurants in New York.
6- What things does she miss about Egypt?
7- Please write back soon.
8- How are things with you?
9- Is Ahmed good at planting trees?
10- Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better.
11- I don t know the names of Chinese dishes.
12- Samira's family lives in a tall building.
13- What's Wael's favorite place in USA?

13 Choose the correct answer:
1- volunteers 2- miss 3- block 4- plant
5- Organic 6- harvest 7- grow 8- sell
9- fertilizer 10- clean 11- residents 12- floor
13- selfish 14- green 15- railway

14 Choose the correct answer:
1- see 2- work 3- never 4- is always
5- often 6- twice 7- rarely 8- live
9- get 10- do 11- are 12- has
13- is 14- have 15- usually has
16- sometimes play 17- are never
18- never 19- usually walk
20- always passes 21- never
22- always studies 23- often go
24- never gives

15 Write a text of (50) words:
"A day with my friends"
I had the best day with my friends! We went to the park and took the bus there. We enjoyed playing on the swings and slides. We even had a picnic and ate

yummy sandwiches. We drank juice to stay hydrated. When it was time to go home, we were tired but so happy. I can't wait to have more fun days like this with my friends!

Test (1) on unit (1)

1 Listen and choose:
1- plants 2- nature 3- wildlife

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- harvest 2- Roof 3- make

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- never 2- usually watch 3- selfish 4- after

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (a) 3- (e) 4- (b) 5- (c)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- Alexandria 2- three
3- He is 38 years old.
4- He reads useful stories to his children.

6 Reorder the words:
1- His garden is usually beautiful.
2- People use the park for sports.
3- There are tall trees in the garden.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
What dish does Amr like to have on Friday?

8 Write an email of (50) words:
From: selim@hotmail.com
To: fady@outlook.com
Subject: My apartment
Hey Fady!
I wanted to tell you about my apartment. It's really cool! It's on the fourth floor. I have my own room with a big window. I love looking out and seeing the city. The living room is relaxing, and we have a big TV for movie nights. In my neighborhood, there's a park nearby where I play with my friends. We also have a restaurant and a library. I love living here!
Take care,
Selim

Revision on Unit 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1) which 2) takes 3) where 4) who

2 Read and complete the text:
1) fur 2) touch 3) friendly 4) claws

3 Read and complete the text:
1) proud 2) buildings 3) map 4) find

4 Read and complete the text:
1) stomach 2) carrots 3) noise 4) Hares

5 Read and complete the text:
1) classroom 2) calculate
3) paint 4) measurements

6 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (e) 3- (b) 4- (c) 5- (a)

7 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (f) 3- (b) 4- (a) 5- (c)

8 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (f) 3- (a) 4- (c) 5- (b)

9 Reorder the words:
1- Do you have all your books yet?
2- We all keep calm in the library.
3- How does Karima feel today?
4- I don't go to school on Fridays.
5- Is everything OK?
6- This is the place where students study science.
7- These laboratories have all the equipment.
8- His birthday party was exciting.
9- These are the shoes which I wear to school.
10- When does Manal wake up for school?
11- Who is your math teacher?
12- We can share my books today.
13- Cats are my favorite pets.
14- Wandaland is a fantasy TV series.

10 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- Welcome to our school, Hazem.
2- Do you have all your books yet, Ahmed?
3- You're really organized, Basel.
4- I love English and Arabic.
5- I love the story of Hare.
6- No, we don't need to get up early on Saturdays.
7- Lions are not friendly animals.
8- Amira and Huda are going to school next Monday.
9- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
10- Hello, my name is Hassan Ali.

Answer Key

11 Choose the correct answer:
1- show 2- messy 3- clever 4- feel
5- organized 6- independent 7- Polite
8- friendly 9- equipment 10- map
11- honey 12- painting 13- fur
14- afraid 15- pets

12 Choose the correct answer:
1- who 2- where 3- who 4- where
5- who 6- who 7- which 8- where
9- where 10- where 11- pleased
12- interesting 13- surprising 14- tired
15- exciting 16- annoying 17- boring
18- tiring 19- tired 20- excited
21- but 22- but 23- but

13 Write an email of (50) words:
From: nancy@hotmail.com
To: hend@yahoo.com
Subject: My family
Hey Hend!
I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you about my family. My dad works at an office, and he's really good with numbers. My mom is a teacher, and she helps students learn new things. My older brother loves playing soccer, so he practices every day. My little sister enjoys drawing, and she creates beautiful artwork. As for me, I love reading books and playing the piano. We all have our own special things we do every day.
Lots of love,
Nancy

Test (2) on unit (2)

1 Listen and choose:
1- painting 2- calculate 3- measure

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- series 2- interesting 3- world

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- Shy 2- 5.00 3- who 4- tiring

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (a) 3- (f) 4- (b) 5- (c)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- five 2- cousin
3- Shady always plays with his sister while she is cooking, washing or cleaning.
4- Dina. She hit Ayman on his head with it.

6 Reorder the words:
1- Do you want to see my school?
2- We go to Alexandria once a year.
3- Does Ola write about her favorite pet?

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
Who is going to travel to Aswan?

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"My pet"
I have the cutest pet ever! It's a dog. His name is Max. Every day, we go for walks together. I make sure to feed him and give him fresh water. I also brush his fur to keep him clean and happy. I love Max because he's always there to play with me, and he makes me feel safe. He's the best friend a kid could ask for!

Revision on Unit 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1) biking 2) helmet 3) book 4) tour

2 Read and complete the text:
1) understand 2) details
3) background 4) action

3 Read and complete the text:
1) fantasy 2) exciting 3) rides 4) theaters

4 Read and complete the text:
1) get up 2) at 3) library 4) on

5 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (a) 3- (f) 4- (b) 5- (c)

6 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (f) 3- (a) 4- (b) 5- (c)

7 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (e) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (c)

8 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (f) 2- (d) 3- (e) 4- (b) 5- (a)

9 Reorder the words:
1- Little Deer runs through the forest.
2- What do the girls do at Bab Zuweila?
3- What is the weather like on Sunday?
4- Should we explore the souks on Monday?
5- I enjoy my time with my family a lot.
6- Let's go to the Manial Palace Museum.
7- I am really excited about our vacation.

8- We can travel to Cairo.
9- I'm excited about our vacation this week.
10- The view from the top is beautiful.
11- I often get up late on Sundays.
12- We can go quad biking in the desert.
13- Where will the guide meet us?
14- What else can we do?
15- What time do we get back?
16- The tour guide will meet us at the hotel.
17- Everyone is wearing helmets.
18- I need my credit card to pay for the tickets.

10 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- We celebrate Sham El-Nessim in spring.
2- My English always gets better if I practice it.
3- How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?
4- How does a rollercoaster work?
5- They went on a trip to the Red Sea.
6- I'm having a party next Thursday.
7- Let's go to Alexandria in August.
8- Are there big parks in Cairo?
9- My brother doesn't like carnivals.
10- There are many buses from Luxor to Aswan.

11 Choose the correct answer:

1- ride 2- concentrate 3- celebrate 4- having
5- get 6- take 7- switches off 8- heights
9- sunset 10- plan 11- work 12- theater
13- climb 14- proud

12 Choose the correct answer:

1- switches 2- visit 3 doesn't have 4 miss
take 6 go 7 don't hurry 8 can visit
9- ask 10- in 11- at 12- on
13- on 14- on 15- at

13 Write a text of (50) words:

"A week in Sharm El-Sheikh"

I spent a week in Sharm El-Sheikh with my family. We went to the beach every day and swam in the sea. We also went snorkeling and saw lots of fish and coral reefs. The sun and fresh air made me feel so happy and healthy. It was so much fun! I would definitely recommend Sharm El-Sheikh to anyone who wants to have a great beach vacation. I would love to go back someday!

Test (3) on unit (3)

1 Listen and choose:

1- remember 2- write 3- check

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

1- scared 2- climb 3- slowly

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- call 2- in 3- can go 4- busy

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (d) 2- (e) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:

1- winter 2- all over the world
3- They come to enjoy the fine weather and sunshine of Egypt when it is very cold in their countries.
4- They buy some souvenirs.

6 Reorder the words:

1- Should Tamer go quad biking on Wednesday?
2- Why do you like the park?
3- How can she climb up the hill?

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

When Mona goes to bed late, she's tired.

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: maged@gmail.com
To: farid@yahoo.com
Subject: An article I read
Hi Farid,
I hope this email finds you well.
5 I was reading an article in the newspaper the other day about how to study well. First, make a study plan. This will help you stay organized and make sure you cover all the material. Find a quiet place to study. Take breaks. Studying for long periods of time can affect you badly. Get up and move around every 20–30 minutes. Get enough sleep. When you're well rested, you'll be better able to focus and remember what you've studied.
Tell me your opinion on that topic.
See you soon,
Maged

Revision on Unit 4

Answer Key

1 Read and complete the text:
1- exams 2- worry 3- running 4- cycling

2 Read and complete the text:
1- countries 2- noodles 3- birthday 4- life

3 Read and complete the text:
1- invite 2- celebration
3- organizing 4- local

4 Match (A) with (B):
1- e 2- d 3- a 4- f 5- b

5 Match (A) with (B):
1- b 2- e 3- a 4- c 5- d

6 Match (A) with (B):
1- d 2- e 3- c 4- b 5- f

7 Reorder the words:
1- We hope you can attend the party.
2- How many people are coming?
3- Can you blow up some balloons?
4- Can I borrow your phone, please?
5- Will you bake the cake for the party?
6- They are playing football with the balloons.
7- Amira is reading a book in an armchair.
8- Can you pass me the glue, please?
9- We are organizing a special day for the event.
10- Who is the birthday party for?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:
1. Do you often go to birthday parties?
2. What are you doing, Youssef?
3. We can ask Adel to make a playlist.
4. I don't like chocolate cake.
5. Mr Yousry is blowing up the balloon.
6. We are practicing for the football game on Sunday.
7. Will you feed the cat, please?
8. We don't know how to make a cake.
9. Yes, Marwa bought a new car.
10. No, I don't think Heba will come.

9 Choose the correct answer: Vocab
1- celebration 2- blow out 3- community
4- let off 5- decorating 6- hanging up
7- sending 8- playlist 9- RSVP
10- about 11- Adults 12- guests
13- noodles 14- attend

10 Choose the correct answer: Grammar
1- am 2- Are 3- enjoys 4- wearing
5- are 6- give 7- bake 8- Are 9- Will
10- am not 11- is 12- is singing
13- are 14- are 15- are practicing

11 Write a text of (50) words:
"Mother's Day Celebration"
Every year, we celebrate the Mother's Day. We celebrate it in March every year. It's a very happy day. I always buy mom a nice present. I always give her flowers with the present. Mom is very happy on that day. We all wait for that day every year. It's a very happy day.

Test (4) on unit (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct word:
1- reading 2- ages 3- history

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- party 2- blow out 3- burn

3 Choose the correct word (s):
1- burn 2- sending 3- is 4- taking

4 Match (A) with (B):
1- e 2- d 3- f 4- a 5- c

5 Read the text and answer the questions:
1- games 2- Tuesday
3- Next Thursday.
4- All her friends will come to the party.

6 Reorder the words:
1- Display a poster on your classroom wall.
2- Who is the invitation addressed to?
3- Amira is reading a book in an armchair.

7 Punctuate the following sentences:
- Are there any special birthday traditions in Egypt?

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"A present you received on your birthday"
I celebrate my birthday every year. I always have a party on that day. Lots of people give me presents on that day. But last year I received the best present I have been given ever. My dad gave me a new smart phone. It was modern and wonderful. I was very happy. I took lots of pictures with it on that day.

Answer Key

Revision on Unit 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1) weather 2) port 3) possible 4) island

2 Read and complete the text:
1) caravan 2) dunes 3) village 4) water

3 Read and complete the text:
1) felucca 2) skills 3) trip 4) sails

4 Read and complete the dialogue:
1) diary 2) remember
3) vacation 4) visiting

5 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (f) 2- (c) 3- (e) 4- (a) 5- (d)

6 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (c) 2- (f) 3- (e) 4- (a) 5- (d)

7 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (f) 2- (e) 3- (a) 4- (b) 5- (c)

8 Reorder the words:
1- I went on a felucca on the River Nile.
2- How does she describe the captain of the boat?
3- What did the writer think of the great pyramids?
4- We stopped to see some incredible things.
5- The ship will leave when the sun comes up.
6- There was good news from the captain.
7- Time seems to move very slowly in this place.
8- I went for long walks around the ship.
9- How does the writer spend his time in the day?
10- I can explore the mysterious island.

9 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- How does the writer describe the island?
2- The water in the sea wasn't warm.
3- Which Egyptian animal does it look like?
4- Nader and Walid were in my class last year.
5- We had a great time at the carnival.
6- The Nok people's tools were made of stone.
7- Did uncle Hazem travel to England last July?
8- Yes, that's true.
9- Winters in Egypt aren't very cold.
10- He went to China eight hundred years ago.

10 Choose the correct answer:
1- voyage 2- across 3- rode 4- explorer
5- mystery 6- continent 7- Clay 8- dunes
9- diary 10- wind 11- delicious 12- treasure
13- quiet 14- inspiration 15- Axes
16- advanced 17- discovery

11 Choose the correct answer:
1- have 2- find 3- was 4- Was
5- flew 6- read 7- catch 8- didn't go
9- do 10- win 11- Were 12- tell
13- rode 14- get 15- sailed

12 Write a text of (50) words:
"An amazing journey"
I had an amazing journey to Cairo and Giza with my family. It was amazing because we saw the pyramids, the Sphinx, and the Egyptian Museum. We also spent time exploring the souks and markets. I brought some souvenirs from Khan El Khalili. We visited Cairo Tower. We saw the River Nile from its top. We had a lot of fun.

Test (5) on unit (5)

1 Listen and choose:
1- archaeologists 2- farming 3- advanced

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- cabin 2- ship 3- captain

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- Archaeologists 2- sails 3- Was 4- have

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (a) 3- (f) 4- (b) 5- (d)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- the box 2- after
3- His wife woke him.
4- No, he was dreaming.

6 Reorder the words:
1- What does the desert look like?
2- I am studying hard at the moment.
3- What is the weather like in Alexandria?

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
My friend Asser is organizing a big party next April.

Answer Key

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: amgad@gmail.com
To: amr@outlook.com
Subject: A day in my diary
Hi Amr,
I hope this email finds you well.
I'm writing to tell you about my day yesterday. I woke up at 7:00 am and had breakfast with my family. Then, I went to school and had classes until 3:00 pm. After school, I went to the library to study for a test. I finished studying at 6:00 pm and went home to eat dinner. I watched TV for a while and then went to bed at 11:00 pm. It was a pretty normal day, but I'm glad I got to spend some time with my family and friends.
How was your day?
Talk to you soon,
Amgad

Revision on Unit 6

1 Read and complete the text:
1- oils 2- roots 3- protects 4- healthy

2 Read and complete the text:
1- bees 2- honey 3- dates 4- drinks

3 Read and complete the text:
1- perfumes 2- expensive 3- herbs 4- mint

4 Read and complete the text:
1- spices 2- taste 3- preserve 4- jars

5 Match (A) with (B):
1- f 2- c 3- a 4- e 5- b

6 Reorder the words:
1- Ancient Egyptians liked to eat well.
2- We need a few lemons for the recipe.
3- I like a lot of milk in my tea.
4- We use spices to cook food.
5- Spices are sold in stores.
6- Tourists buy souvenirs when they visit Egypt.
7- Their toothpaste had salt and pepper in it.
8- Is there any butter in the bowl?
9- There's a little money in my mom's bag.
10- There are some students in the laboratory.

7 Punctuate the following sentences:
1. There isn't any bread in the kitchen.
2. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes.
3. How did some leaders in Ancient Egypt use kapet.
4. How much milk does Hend want in your coffee.
5. Mint tea is a traditional drink in north Africa.
6. Do you always brush your teeth?
7. No I am not going to brush my teeth.
8. Omar works in a bakery next to our house.

8 Choose the correct answer: Vocab
1- secret 2- squeeze 3- Heat 4- souvenirs 5- soap 6- spices 7- smells 8- pour 9- care 10- stores 11- crown 12- astonished

9 Choose the correct answer: Grammar
1- much 2- some 3- much 4- a little 5- lemons 6- few 7- some 8- some 9- many 10- much 11- are 12- is 13- some 14- a lot

Test (6) on unit (6)

1 Listen and choose the correct word:
1- palace 2- caretakers 3- mysterious

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- spices 2- restaurants 3- recipes

3 Choose the correct word (s):
1- famous 2- mint 3- spices 4- isn't

4 Match (A) witsh (B):
1- e 2- f 3- a 4- b 5- d

5 Read the text and answer the questions:
1- home 2- walked
3- Ten. 4- Because he felt tired.

6 Reorder the words:
1- How much homework did you do yesterday?
2- Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies.
3- Where does Peter find the king?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:
- What did Ancient Egyptians use to take care of themselves?

8 Write an email of (50) words:
From: maged@gmail.com
To: selim@yahoo.com
Subject: Personal care routines
Dear Selim,
How are you and your family? I hope you are well. I'm pleased to write to you now. I'm writing to tell you about my personal care routines. The most important is washing my hands before and after having meals. I also brush my teeth twice a day. I brush my hair regularly. And of course have a shower or a bath from time to time. I use shampoo, soap, toothpaste, toothbrush and a hairbrush.
Lots of love
Magda

Part 3 School Exams

Test (1)

1 Listen and choose:
1- organization 2- nature 3- best

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- harvest 2- Roof 3- make

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- helpful 2- on 3- much 4- railway

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- quiet 2- happy
3- They lived in small houses.
4- No, there wasn't.

6 Reorder the words:
1- I buy a lot of personal care products.
2- Do you want to come to my house?
3- Mariam doesn't like eating fast food.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
Do you like reading books?

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"How did Ancient Egyptians like to be clean?"
The Ancient Egyptians liked to be clean in different ways. They loved using perfumes that smelled strong and nice. They even had special oils for their skin. To clean their teeth, the Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush – a stick with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end. They liked to wash themselves in the River Nile.

Test (2)

1 Listen and choose:
1- products 2- perfume 3- expensive

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- exams 2- book 3- running

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- eat 2- sharp 3- wearing 4- helpful

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (f) 3- (a) 4- (e) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- windy 2- sunny
3- It's very hot in the summer. 4- Yes, it is.

6 Reorder the words:
1- Adel is not a nervous person.
2- Can you help me, please?
3- Where does Peter find the king?

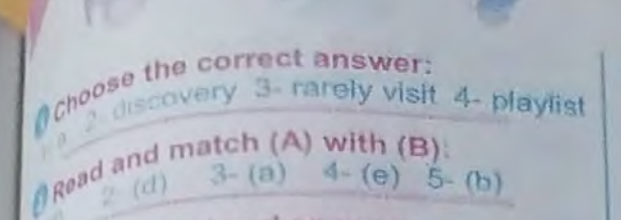
7 Punctuate the following sentence:
Mohamed Salah is a great footballer.

8 Write an email of (50) words:
From: mazen@school.net
To: omar@hotmail.com
Subject: Amazing summer adventures in Sharm El-Sheikh!
Dear Omar!
I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you all about my awesome summer holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh. We visited the beautiful Ras Mohammed National Park and saw colorful fish and coral reefs while snorkeling. We also tried delicious local food. My whole family enjoyed the trip with me, but I missed you a lot! I can't wait to catch up and hear about your summer too!
Lots of love,
Mazen

Test (3)

1 Listen and choose:
1- soft 2- clean 3- claws

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- cakes 2- candles 3- present



Choose the correct answer:
1- ... 2- discovery 3- rarely visit 4- playlist

Read and match (A) with (B):
1- ... 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (e) 5- (b)

Read the text and answer:
1- vegetables 2- morning
3- He hopes he will be able to buy a cart and donkey to ride it to his field and back home.
4- He grows different kinds of fruit and vegetables.

Reorder the words:
1- How often do you eat cheese?
2- My dad didn't go to his work yesterday.
3- She sometimes goes to the club.

Punctuate the following sentence:
No, I don't like these toys.

Write a text of (50) words:
"Having fun at the community garden"
I had so much fun at the community garden! We planted lots of cool stuff, like tomatoes and peppers. It's great to have green spaces in our neighborhood. We learned how to take care of plants and watched them grow. When they were ready, we picked fresh tomatoes and peppers. It was awesome to eat food we grew ourselves. Community gardens are the best!

Test (4)

1 Listen and choose:
1- Italian 2- China 3- century

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- oils 2- dirt 3- shiny

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- balloons 2- Are 3- make 4- a few

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (c) 2- (a) 3- (f) 4- (e) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- smaller 2- cheaper
3- The first plane was made in 1903.
4- Some people think that traveling by plane is not safe.

6 Reorder the words:
1- I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment.
2- English is my favorite school subject.
3- We can climb up this tree.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
Let's watch a movie together.

8 Write an email of (50) words:
From: osama@school.net
To: amr@hotmail.com
Subject: A book I read about Marco Polo
Hi Amr!
I just finished reading this awesome book about Marco Polo, and I couldn't wait to tell you about it! Marco explored so many cool places, like China and India. I liked that he traveled a lot and brought back stories of new cultures and amazing treasures. He had a very exciting adventure! You should definitely read this book too.
Lots of love,
Osama

Test (5)

1 Listen and choose:
1- bodies 2- Nile 3- beans

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- countries 2- plants 3- roofs

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- How often 2- climb 3- who 4- Perfume

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (f) 3- (b) 4- (c) 5- (a)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- farm 2- nice
3- The farmers' sons were helping them with their work.
4- They grow vegetables and fruit.

6 Reorder the words:
1- I don't like making candles.
2- My sister always eats a healthy breakfast.
3- There are many cars in New York.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
Which area of Egypt produces the most wheat?

Answer Key

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"A visit to the zoo"

Last week, my family and I went to the zoo! We drove there in our car and packed a yummy lunch. I saw so many cool animals like lions, monkeys, and giraffes. We even got to feed the elephants! It was so much fun watching them play. I learned a lot about different animals and their habitats. I can't wait to go back to the zoo again soon!

Test (6)

1 Listen and choose:
1- forests 2- data 3- volunteers

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- move 2- different 3- friends

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- Are there 2- didn't speak 3- shed
4- soft

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (c) 2- (e) 3- (b) 4- (f) 5- (a)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- coffee 2- thousand
3- Coffee grew first in Ethiopia.
4- Arab travelers took the coffee plant to Egypt and other Arab countries.

6 Reorder the words:
1- Peter lives in a big palace.
2- Do you like using perfumes?
3- My dad works in a factory.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
My friend Ali and I went on a trip.

8 Write an email of (50) words:
From: nadia@school.net
To: salma@hotmail.com
Subject: Fun weekend adventures!
Hey Salma!
I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you all about my exciting weekend. On Saturday, my family and I went to the park. We had a picnic and played games like hide-and-seek and football. It was so much fun! On Sunday, we went to the movie theater and watched a cool superhero movie. We also had ice cream afterward. It was the best weekend ever! I can't wait to hear about your weekend too.
Take care,
Nadia

Test (7)

1 Listen and choose:
1- family 2- rollercoaster 3- eat

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- playground 2- sit 3- grow

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- exciting 2- went 3- but 4- blow up

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (f) 3- (e) 4- (b) 5- (a)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- parks 2- bins
3- Some children pick flowers and walk on grass.
4- So we can enjoy them at any time.

6 Reorder the words:
1- How often do you go to the dentist?
2- I'm surprised to see you here!
3- My uncle works in a hospital.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
He's going to Aswan on Thursday.

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"After-school activities"

After school, I do my homework. It's important to finish it before anything else. Then I watch TV for a little while. Sometimes, my mom takes me to the club, where I play games with my friends. We have dinner together. My favorite part is when we eat dessert! After that, it's time to go to bed and sleep. I love my after-school activities!